1 Arduboy2 Library
   1.1 Library documentation .............................................. 1
   1.2 Installation .............................................................. 1
   1.3 Start up features ......................................................... 2
      1.3.1 The boot logo ....................................................... 2
      1.3.2 "Flashlight" mode .................................................. 2
      1.3.3 Audio mute control ................................................. 2
   1.4 Using the library in a sketch .......................................... 3
      1.4.1 Using EEPROM in a sketch < THIS IS IMPORTANT! ............... 3
      1.4.2 Audio control functions .......................................... 3
      1.4.3 Simple tone generation ............................................ 4
      1.4.4 Ways to make more code space available to sketches .......... 4
         1.4.4.1 Sound effects and music ................................... 4
         1.4.4.2 Remove the text functions ................................ 4
         1.4.4.3 Substitute or remove boot up features .................... 4
         1.4.4.4 Use the SpritesB class instead of Sprites ............... 6
         1.4.4.5 Eliminate the USB stack code ............................... 6
   1.5 What's different from Arduboy library V1.1 ......................... 6
   1.6 Migrating a sketch from Arduboy library V1.1 to Arduboy2 .......... 7
      1.6.1 Required changes .................................................. 7
      1.6.2 Sketch uses only tunes.tone() for sound ...................... 8
         1.6.2.1 Solution 1: Switch to using Arduino tone() .............. 8
         1.6.2.2 Solution 2: Switch to using the ArduboyTones library ... 8
         1.6.2.3 Solution 3: Switch to using the ArduboyPlaytune library 8
      1.6.3 Sketch uses tunes.playScore() ................................... 8
      1.6.4 Sketch uses the beginNoLogo() function instead of begin() . 9

2 Software License Agreements .............................................. 11

3 Hierarchical Index .......................................................... 17
   3.1 Class Hierarchy ......................................................... 17

4 Class Index ........................................................................ 19
   4.1 Class List ....................................................................... 19

5 File Index ............................................................................ 21
   5.1 File List ......................................................................... 21

6 Class Documentation ............................................................ 23
   6.1 Arduboy2 Class Reference .............................................. 23
      6.1.1 Detailed Description ................................................. 29
      6.1.2 Member Function Documentation ................................ 29
         6.1.2.1 allPixelsOn() .................................................... 29
         6.1.2.2 anyPressed() .................................................... 30
6.1.2.3 begin() .......................................................... 30
6.1.2.4 beginDoFirst() .............................................. 31
6.1.2.5 blank() .......................................................... 31
6.1.2.6 boot() ............................................................. 31
6.1.2.7 bootLogo() ...................................................... 31
6.1.2.8 bootLogoCompressed() ....................................... 32
6.1.2.9 bootLogoExtra() .............................................. 32
6.1.2.10 bootLogoShell() ............................................. 32
6.1.2.11 bootLogoSpritesBOverwrite() ........................... 33
6.1.2.12 bootLogoSpritesBSelfMasked() ......................... 33
6.1.2.13 bootLogoSpritesOverwrite() ............................. 33
6.1.2.14 bootLogoSpritesSelfMasked() ......................... 33
6.1.2.15 bootLogoText() .............................................. 34
6.1.2.16 buttonsState() ............................................. 34
6.1.2.17 collide() ..................................................... 34
6.1.2.18 collide() ..................................................... 35
6.1.2.19 cpuLoad() .................................................... 35
6.1.2.20 delayShort() ................................................ 35
6.1.2.21 digitalWriteRGB() [1/2] ................................. 36
6.1.2.22 digitalWriteRGB() [2/2] .................................. 36
6.1.2.23 display() [1/2] ............................................... 37
6.1.2.24 display() [2/2] ............................................... 37
6.1.2.25 displayOff() ................................................ 37
6.1.2.26 displayOn() .................................................. 38
6.1.2.27 drawBitmap() ............................................... 38
6.1.2.28 drawChar() .................................................. 39
6.1.2.29 drawCircle() ............................................... 39
6.1.2.30 drawCompressed() ......................................... 40
6.1.2.31 drawFastHLine() ........................................... 40
6.1.2.32 drawFastVLine() .......................................... 41
6.1.2.33 drawLine() .................................................. 41
6.1.2.34 drawPixel() .................................................. 41
6.1.2.35 drawRect() .................................................. 42
6.1.2.36 drawRoundRect() .......................................... 42
6.1.2.37 drawSlowXYBitmap() ..................................... 43
6.1.2.38 drawTriangle() ............................................ 43
6.1.2.39 everyXFrames() ............................................ 44
6.1.2.40 exitToBootloader() ....................................... 44
6.1.2.41 fillCircle() .................................................. 45
6.1.2.42 fillRect() ................................................... 45
6.1.2.43 fillRoundRect() ........................................... 45
6.1.2.44 fillScreen() ................................................ 46
6.1.2.45 fillTriangle() .................................................. 46
6.1.2.46 flashlight() ...................................................... 47
6.1.2.47 flipHorizontal() .................................................. 47
6.1.2.48 flipVertical() ..................................................... 47
6.1.2.49 freeRGBled() ....................................................... 48
6.1.2.50 generateRandomSeed() .......................................... 48
6.1.2.51 getBuffer() ........................................................ 48
6.1.2.52 getCharacterHeight() ............................................ 49
6.1.2.53 getCharacterSpacing() ......................................... 49
6.1.2.54 getCharacterWidth() ............................................ 49
6.1.2.55 getCursorX() ...................................................... 50
6.1.2.56 getCursorY() ...................................................... 50
6.1.2.57 getLineSpacing() .................................................. 50
6.1.2.58 getPixel() ......................................................... 51
6.1.2.59 getTextBackground() .......................................... 51
6.1.2.60 getTextColor() .................................................... 52
6.1.2.61 getTextRawMode() .............................................. 52
6.1.2.62 getTextSize() ..................................................... 52
6.1.2.63 getTextWrap() .................................................... 52
6.1.2.64 height() ............................................................ 53
6.1.2.65 idle() ............................................................... 53
6.1.2.66 initRandomSeed() ............................................... 53
6.1.2.67 invert() ............................................................ 53
6.1.2.68 justPressed() ..................................................... 53
6.1.2.69 justReleased() ................................................... 54
6.1.2.70 LCDCommandMode() ............................................ 54
6.1.2.71 LCDDataMode() .................................................. 55
6.1.2.72 nextFrame() ...................................................... 55
6.1.2.73 nextFrameDEV() ................................................ 56
6.1.2.74 notPressed() ...................................................... 56
6.1.2.75 paint8Pixels() .................................................... 56
6.1.2.76 paintScreen() [1/2] ............................................. 57
6.1.2.77 paintScreen() [2/2] ............................................. 57
6.1.2.78 pollButtons() ..................................................... 58
6.1.2.79 pressed() .......................................................... 58
6.1.2.80 readShowBootLogoFlag() ..................................... 59
6.1.2.81 readShowBootLogoLEDsFlag() .................................. 59
6.1.2.82 readShowUnitNameFlag() ....................................... 59
6.1.2.83 readUnitID() ...................................................... 60
6.1.2.84 readUnitName() ................................................... 60
6.1.2.85 safeMode() ........................................................ 61
6.1.2.86 sendLCDCommand() ............................................. 61
6.3 Arduboy2Base Class Reference ................................................................. 76
6.3.1 Detailed Description .................................................................................. 81
6.3.2 Member Function Documentation ............................................................ 81
  6.3.2.1 allPixelsOn() ....................................................................................... 81
  6.3.2.2 anyPressed() ....................................................................................... 82
  6.3.2.3 begin() ......................................................................................... 82
  6.3.2.4 beginDoFirst() ................................................................................... 83
  6.3.2.5 blank() ......................................................................................... 83
  6.3.2.6 boot() ......................................................................................... 83
  6.3.2.7 bootLogo() ..................................................................................... 83
  6.3.2.8 bootLogoCompressed() ...................................................................... 84
  6.3.2.9 bootLogoShell() .............................................................................. 84
  6.3.2.10 bootLogoSpritesBOverwrite() ......................................................... 84
  6.3.2.11 bootLogoSpritesBSelfMasked() ....................................................... 85
  6.3.2.12 bootLogoSpritesOverwrite() .......................................................... 85
  6.3.2.13 bootLogoSpritesSelfMasked() ......................................................... 85
  6.3.2.14 buttonsState() ............................................................................... 85
  6.3.2.15 clear() ......................................................................................... 85
  6.3.2.16 collide() [1/2] ............................................................................... 86
  6.3.2.17 collide() [2/2] ............................................................................... 86
  6.3.2.18 cpuLoad() ..................................................................................... 86
  6.3.2.19 delayShort() .................................................................................. 87
  6.3.2.20 digitalWriteRGB() [1/2] ................................................................ 87
  6.3.2.21 digitalWriteRGB() [2/2] ................................................................ 88
  6.3.2.22 display() [1/2] .............................................................................. 88
  6.3.2.23 display() [2/2] .............................................................................. 89
  6.3.2.24 displayOff() .................................................................................. 89
  6.3.2.25 displayOn() ................................................................................... 89
  6.3.2.26 drawBitmap() ............................................................................... 90
  6.3.2.27.drawCircle() .................................................................................. 90
  6.3.2.28 drawCompressed() ......................................................................... 91
  6.3.2.29 drawFastHLine() ........................................................................... 91
  6.3.2.30 drawFastVLine() ........................................................................... 92
  6.3.2.31 drawLine() .................................................................................... 92
  6.3.2.32 drawPixel() ................................................................................... 92
  6.3.2.33 drawRect() .................................................................................... 93
  6.3.2.34 drawRoundRect() .......................................................................... 93
  6.3.2.35 drawSlowXYBitmap() ................................................................... 94
  6.3.2.36 drawTriangle() ............................................................................. 94
  6.3.2.37 everyXFrames() ............................................................................ 95
  6.3.2.38 exitToBootloader() ....................................................................... 95
  6.3.2.39 fillCircle() ................................................................................... 96
6.3.2.40 fillRect() .......................................................... 96
6.3.2.41 fillRoundRect() .................................................. 96
6.3.2.42 fillScreen() .......................................................... 97
6.3.2.43 fillTriangle() ...................................................... 97
6.3.2.44 flashlight() .......................................................... 98
6.3.2.45 flipHorizontal() ................................................ 98
6.3.2.46 flipVertical() ..................................................... 98
6.3.2.47 freeRGBled() ...................................................... 99
6.3.2.48 generateRandomSeed() ........................................... 99
6.3.2.49 getBuffer() .......................................................... 99
6.3.2.50 getPixel() .......................................................... 100
6.3.2.51 height() .............................................................. 100
6.3.2.52 idle() ................................................................. 100
6.3.2.53 initRandomSeed() ............................................... 100
6.3.2.54 invert() .............................................................. 101
6.3.2.55 justPressed() ..................................................... 101
6.3.2.56 justReleased() ................................................... 101
6.3.2.57 LCDCommandMode() ............................................ 102
6.3.2.58 LCDDataMode() .................................................. 102
6.3.2.59 nextFrame() .......................................................... 103
6.3.2.60 nextFrameDEV() .................................................. 103
6.3.2.61 notPressed() ....................................................... 103
6.3.2.62 paint8Pixels() ..................................................... 104
6.3.2.63 paintScreen() [1/2] .............................................. 104
6.3.2.64 paintScreen() [2/2] .............................................. 105
6.3.2.65 pollButtons() ..................................................... 105
6.3.2.66 pressed() ........................................................... 106
6.3.2.67 readShowBootLogoFlag() ...................................... 106
6.3.2.68 readShowBootLogoLEDsFlag() ................................ 106
6.3.2.69 readShowUnitNameFlag() ....................................... 107
6.3.2.70 readUnitID() ....................................................... 107
6.3.2.71 readUnitName() ................................................... 107
6.3.2.72 safeMode() .......................................................... 108
6.3.2.73 sendLCDCommand() ............................................. 108
6.3.2.74 setFrameDuration() ............................................. 109
6.3.2.75 setFrameRate() ................................................... 109
6.3.2.76 setRGBled() [1/2] ............................................... 109
6.3.2.77 setRGBled() [2/2] ............................................... 110
6.3.2.78 SPItransfer() ...................................................... 111
6.3.2.79 SPItransferAndRead() ......................................... 111
6.3.2.80 systemButtons() .................................................. 111
6.3.2.81 waitNoButtons() .................................................. 112
6.3.2.82 width() ................................................................. 112
6.3.2.83 writeShowBootLogoFlag() ................................... 112
6.3.2.84 writeShowBootLogoLEDsFlag() ............................... 112
6.3.2.85 writeShowUnitNameFlag() .................................... 113
6.3.2.86 writeUnitID() ..................................................... 113
6.3.2.87 writeUnitName() .................................................. 113

6.3.3 Member Data Documentation ....................................... 114
6.3.3.1 arduboy_logo ...................................................... 114
6.3.3.2 arduboy_logo_compressed ...................................... 114
6.3.3.3 arduboy_logo_sprite ............................................. 115
6.3.3.4 audio .............................................................. 115
6.3.3.5 currentButtonState .............................................. 115
6.3.3.6 frameCount ....................................................... 116
6.3.3.7 previousButtonState ............................................ 116
6.3.3.8 sBuffer .......................................................... 117

6.4 Arduboy2Core Class Reference ...................................... 117
6.4.1 Detailed Description ................................................ 119
6.4.2 Member Function Documentation ................................. 119
6.4.2.1 allPixelsOn() .................................................... 119
6.4.2.2 blank() .......................................................... 119
6.4.2.3 boot() ............................................................ 119
6.4.2.4 buttonsState() .................................................. 120
6.4.2.5 delayShort() ..................................................... 120
6.4.2.6 digitalWriteRGB() ........................................... 120
6.4.2.7 digitalWriteRGB() ........................................... 121
6.4.2.8 displayOff() ..................................................... 121
6.4.2.9 displayOn() ..................................................... 122
6.4.2.10 exitToBootloader() .......................................... 122
6.4.2.11 flipHorizontal() ............................................. 122
6.4.2.12 flipVertical() ................................................ 123
6.4.2.13 freeRGBled() ................................................. 123
6.4.2.14 generateRandomSeed() ...................................... 123
6.4.2.15 height() ......................................................... 124
6.4.2.16 idle() .......................................................... 124
6.4.2.17 invert() ........................................................ 124
6.4.2.18 LCDCommandMode() ...................................... 124
6.4.2.19 LCDDataMode() ............................................. 125
6.4.2.20 paint8Pixels() ................................................. 125
6.4.2.21 paintScreen() ................................................ 125
6.4.2.22 paintScreen() ............................................... 126
6.4.2.23 safeMode() .................................................... 126
6.4.2.24 sendLCDCommand() ......................................... 126
6.4.2.25 setRGBled() [1/2] .................................................. 127
6.4.2.26 setRGBled() [2/2] .................................................. 127
6.4.2.27 SPItransfer() .......................................................... 128
6.4.2.28 SPItransferAndRead() ............................................. 128
6.4.2.29 width() ................................................................. 129

6.5 BeepPin1 Class Reference ............................................... 129
6.5.1 Detailed Description .................................................... 129
6.5.2 Member Function Documentation .................................... 131
  6.5.2.1 begin() ................................................................ 131
  6.5.2.2 freq() .................................................................. 131
  6.5.2.3 noTone() .............................................................. 131
  6.5.2.4 timer() ................................................................ 132
  6.5.2.5 tone() [1/2] ............................................................ 132
  6.5.2.6 tone() [2/2] ............................................................ 132
6.5.3 Member Data Documentation ........................................... 132
  6.5.3.1 duration ................................................................ 133

6.6 BeepPin2 Class Reference ............................................... 133
6.6.1 Detailed Description .................................................... 133
6.6.2 Member Function Documentation .................................... 134
  6.6.2.1 begin() ................................................................ 134
  6.6.2.2 freq() .................................................................. 134
  6.6.2.3 noTone() .............................................................. 134
  6.6.2.4 timer() ................................................................ 134
  6.6.2.5 tone() [1/2] ............................................................ 134
  6.6.2.6 tone() [2/2] ............................................................ 135
6.6.3 Member Data Documentation ........................................... 135
  6.6.3.1 duration ................................................................ 135

6.7 Point Struct Reference .................................................... 135
6.7.1 Detailed Description .................................................... 135
6.7.2 Constructor & Destructor Documentation ....................... 136
  6.7.2.1 Point() ................................................................ 136
6.7.3 Member Data Documentation ........................................... 136
  6.7.3.1 x ....................................................................... 136
  6.7.3.2 y ....................................................................... 136

6.8 Print Class Reference ..................................................... 136
6.8.1 Detailed Description .................................................... 137

6.9 Rect Struct Reference .................................................... 137
6.9.1 Detailed Description .................................................... 138
6.9.2 Constructor & Destructor Documentation ....................... 138
  6.9.2.1 Rect() ................................................................ 138
6.9.3 Member Data Documentation ........................................... 138
  6.9.3.1 height ................................................................ 138
7.7 Arduboy2Core.cpp File Reference ........................................ 152
  7.7.1 Detailed Description ............................................. 153
7.8 Arduboy2Core.h File Reference .................................... 153
  7.8.1 Detailed Description ............................................. 154
  7.8.2 Macro Definition Documentation .............................. 154
    7.8.2.1 A_BUTTON ................................................. 154
    7.8.2.2 ARDUBOY_NO_USB ........................................ 155
    7.8.2.3 B_BUTTON ............................................... 155
    7.8.2.4 BLUE_LED ............................................... 155
    7.8.2.5 DOWN_BUTTON ............................................ 155
    7.8.2.6 GREEN_LED ............................................... 156
    7.8.2.7 HEIGHT .................................................. 156
    7.8.2.8 LEFT_BUTTON ............................................ 156
    7.8.2.9 PIN_SPEAKER_1 .......................................... 156
    7.8.2.10 PIN_SPEAKER_2 ......................................... 156
    7.8.2.11 RED_LED ................................................ 156
    7.8.2.12 RGB_OFF ............................................... 156
    7.8.2.13 RGB_ON ................................................ 156
    7.8.2.14 RIGHT_BUTTON .......................................... 157
    7.8.2.15 UP_BUTTON .............................................. 157
    7.8.2.16 WIDTH .................................................. 157
7.9 Arduboy2Data.cpp File Reference .................................. 157
  7.9.1 Detailed Description ........................................... 157
7.10 Sprites.cpp File Reference ....................................... 157
  7.10.1 Detailed Description ......................................... 158
7.11 Sprites.h File Reference ......................................... 158
  7.11.1 Detailed Description ......................................... 159
7.12 SpritesB.cpp File Reference ...................................... 159
  7.12.1 Detailed Description ......................................... 159
7.13 SpritesB.h File Reference ........................................ 160
  7.13.1 Detailed Description ......................................... 160
7.14 SpritesCommon.h File Reference .................................. 160
  7.14.1 Detailed Description ......................................... 161

Index ................................................................. 163
Chapter 1

Arduboy2 Library

The Arduboy2 library is maintained in a git repository hosted on GitHub at:

https://github.com/MLXXXp/Arduboy2

The Arduboy2 library is a fork of the Arduboy library, which provides a standard application programming interface (API) to the display, buttons and other hardware of the Arduino based Arduboy miniature game system. The original Arduboy library is no longer being maintained.

The name Arduboy2 doesn't indicate that it's for a new "next generation" of the Arduboy hardware. The name was changed so it can coexist in the Arduino IDE with the current Arduboy library, without conflict. This way, existing sketches can continue to use the Arduboy library and class, without changes, while new sketches can be written (or old ones modified) to use and take advantage of the capabilities of the Arduboy2 class and library.

For notes on the differences between the Arduboy2 library and the original Arduboy library, and for information on migrating a sketch currently using the Arduboy library, see the sections at the end of this document.

1.1 Library documentation

Comments in the library header files are formatted for the Doxygen document generation system. The HTML files generated using the configuration file extras/Doxyfile can be found at:


A generated PDF file can be found at:


1.2 Installation

The Arduboy2 library can be installed using the Arduino IDE Library Manager:

- In the Arduino IDE select from the menus: Sketch > Include Library > Manage Libraries...
- In the Library Manager Filter your search... field enter arduboy2.
- Click somewhere within the Arduboy2 entry.
- Click on the Install button.

For more library installation information see

Installing Additional Arduino Libraries - Using the Library Manager
1.3 Start up features

The `begin()` function, used to initialize the library, includes features that are intended to be available to all sketches using the library (unless the sketch developer has chosen to disable one or more of them to free up some code space):

1.3.1 The boot logo

At the start of the sketch, the ARDUBOY logo scrolls down from the top of the screen to the center.

The RGB LED lights red then green then blue while the logo is scrolling. (If your Arduboy is one of those that has the RGB LED installed incorrectly, then it will light blue then off then red). For users who do not wish to have the RGB LED flash during the boot logo sequence, a flag can be set in system EEPROM to have it remain off. The included SetSystemEEPROM example sketch can be used to set this flag.

A user settable unit name can be saved in system EEPROM memory. If set, this name will be briefly displayed at the bottom of the boot logo screen, after the logo stops scrolling down. This feature is only available if the Arduboy2 class is used, not the Arduboy2Base class. This is because it requires the text display functions, which are only available in the Arduboy2 class. A flag in system EEPROM controls whether or not the unit name is displayed on the boot logo screen, regardless of whether the unit name itself has been set. The included SetSystemEEPROM example sketch can be used to set both the unit name and this flag.

Once the logo display sequence completes, the sketch continues.

Note:

- For developers who wish to quickly begin testing, or impatient users who want to go strait to playing their game, the boot logo sequence can be bypassed by holding the RIGHT button while powering up, and then releasing it. Alternatively, the RIGHT button can be pressed while the logo is scrolling down.

- For users who wish to always disable the displaying of the boot logo sequence on boot up, a flag in system EEPROM is available for this. The included SetSystemEEPROM example sketch can be used to set this flag.

1.3.2 "Flashlight" mode

If the UP button is pressed and held when the Arduboy is powered on, it enters flashlight mode. This turns the RGB LED fully on, and all the pixels of the screen are lit, resulting in a bright white light suitable as a small flashlight. (For an incorrect RGB LED, only the screen will light). To exit flashlight mode the Arduboy must be restarted.

Flashlight mode is also sometimes useful to allow uploading of new sketches, in case the sketch currently loaded uses a large amount of RAM which creates a bootloader problem.

1.3.3 Audio mute control

Pressing and holding the B button when powering on will enter System Control mode. The RGB LED will light blue (red for an incorrect LED) to indicate that you are in system control mode. You must continue to hold the B button to remain in this mode. The only system control function currently implemented is audio mute control.

Pressing the UP button (while still holding B) will set a flag in system EEPROM indicating audio enabled. The RGB LED will flash green once (off for an incorrect LED) to indicate this action.

Pressing the DOWN button (while still holding B) will set the flag to audio disabled (muted). The RGB LED will flash red once (blue for an incorrect LED) to indicate this action.

Releasing the B button will exit system control mode and the sketch will continue.

Note that the audio control feature only sets a flag in EEPROM. Whatever code actually produces the sound must use the `audio.enabled()` function to check and honor the mute state. Audio libraries written with the Arduboy system in mind, such as the available ArduboyPlaytune and ArduboyTones, should do this. However, be aware that for some sketches, which don't use the Arduboy2 or other compliant library and generate sounds in their own way, this method of muting sound may not work.
1.4 Using the library in a sketch

As with most libraries, to use Arduboy2 in your sketch you must include its header file at the start:
#include <Arduboy2.h>

You must then create an Arduboy2 class object:
Arduboy2 arduboy;

Naming the object arduboy has become somewhat of a standard, but you can use a different name if you wish.

To initialize the library, you must call its begin() function. This is usually done at the start of the sketch’s setup() function:
void setup()
{
  arduboy.begin();
  // more setup code follows, if required
}

The rest of the Arduboy2 functions will now be available for use.

If you wish to use the Sprites class functions you must create a Sprites object:
Sprites sprites;

Sample sketches have been included with the library as examples of how to use it. To load an example, for examination and uploading to the Arduboy, using the Arduino IDE menus select:

File > Examples > Arduboy2

More information on writing sketches for the Arduboy can be found in the Arduboy Community Forum.

1.4.1 Using EEPROM in a sketch <- THIS IS IMPORTANT!

The Arduboy2 library reserves an area at the start of EEPROM for storing system information, such as the current audio mute state and the Unit Name and Unit ID. A sketch MUST NOT use this reserved area for its own purposes. A sketch may use any EEPROM past this reserved area. The first EEPROM address available for sketch use is given as the defined value EEPROM_STORAGE_SPACE_START

1.4.2 Audio control functions

The library includes an Arduboy2Audio class. This class provides functions to enable and disable (mute) sound and also save the current mute state so that it remains in effect over power cycles and after loading a different sketch. It doesn't contain anything to actually produce sound.

The Arduboy2Base class, and thus the Arduboy2 class, creates an Arduboy2Audio class object named audio, so a sketch doesn't need to create its own Arduboy2Audio object.

Example:
#include <Arduboy2.h>
Arduboy2 arduboy;
// Arduboy2Audio functions can be called as follows:
arduboy.audio.on();
arduboy.audio.off();
1.4.3 Simple tone generation

The BeepPin1 and BeepPin2 classes are available to generate simple square wave tones using speaker pin 1 and speaker pin 2 respectively. These classes are documented in file Arduboy2Beep.h. Also, BeepDemo is included as one of the example sketches, which demonstrates basic use.

NOTE: These functions will not work with a DevKit Arduboy because the speaker pins used cannot be directly controlled by a timer/counter. “Dummy” functions are provided so a sketch will compile and work properly but no sound will be produced.

1.4.4 Ways to make more code space available to sketches

1.4.4.1 Sound effects and music

If all you want is to play single tones, using the built in BeepPin1 or BeepPin2 classes will be very efficient.

If you want to be able to play sequences of tones or background music, using the ArduboyTones library will be more code efficient than using ArduboyPlaytune or most other sound libraries compatible with the Arduboy. ArduboyTones even produces less code than the Arduino built-in tone() function. You’ll have to decide on the appropriate library or functions you use to generate sound, based on the features required and how much memory you want it to use.

1.4.4.2 Remove the text functions

If your sketch doesn’t use any of the functions for displaying text, such as setCursor() and print(), you can remove them. You could do this if your sketch generates whatever text it requires by some other means. Removing the text functions frees up code by not including the font table and some code that is always pulled in by inheriting the Arduino Print class.

To eliminate text capability in your sketch, when creating the library object simply use the Arduboy2Base class instead of Arduboy2:

For example, if the object will be named arduboy:

Replace

Arduboy2 arduboy;

with

Arduboy2Base arduboy;

1.4.4.3 Substitute or remove boot up features

As previously described in the Start up features section, the begin() function includes features that are intended to be available to all sketches during boot up. However, if you’re looking to gain some code space, you can call boot() instead of begin(). This will initialize the system but not include any of the extra boot up features. You can then add back in any of these features by calling the functions that perform them. You will have to trade off between the desirability of having a feature and how much memory you can recover by not including it.

You should at least call either flashlight() or safeMode() as a safeguard to allow uploading a new sketch when the bootloader “magic key” problem is an issue.

Here is a template that provides the equivalent of begin()

void setup()
1.4 Using the library in a sketch

```
// Required to initialize the hardware.
arduboy.boot();
// This clears the display. (The screen buffer will be all zeros)
// It may not be needed if something clears the display later on but
// "garbage" will be displayed if systemButtons() is used without it.
arduboy.display();
// flashlight() or safeMode() should always be included to provide
// a method of recovering from the bootloader "magic key" problem.
arduboy.flashlight();
// arduboy.safeMode();
// This allows sound to be turned on or muted. If the sketch provides
// its own way of toggling sound, or doesn't produce any sound, this
// function may not be required.
arduboy.systemButtons();
// This is required to initialize the speaker. It's not needed if
// the sketch doesn't produce any sounds.
arduboy.audio.begin();
// This displays the boot logo sequence but note that the logo can
// be suppressed by the user, by pressing the RIGHT button or using
// a system EEPROM setting. If not removed entirely, an alternative
// bootLogo...() function may save some memory.
arduboy.bootLogo();
// arduboy.bootLogoCompressed();
// arduboy.bootLogoSpritesSelfMasked();
// arduboy.bootLogoSpritesOverwrite();
// arduboy.bootLogoSpritesBSelfMasked();
// arduboy.bootLogoSpritesBOverwrite();
// arduboy.bootLogoText();
// Wait for all buttons to be released, in case a pressed one might
// cause problems by being acted upon when the actual sketch code
// starts. If neither systemButtons() nor bootLogo() is kept, this
// function isn't required.
arduboy.waitNoButtons();
// Additional setup code...
```

There are a few functions provided that are roughly equivalent to the standard functions used by `begin()` but which use less code space.

- `bootLogoCompressed()`, `bootLogoSpritesSelfMasked()`, `bootLogoSpritesOverwrite()`, `bootLogoSpritesBSelfMasked()` and `bootLogoSpritesBOverwrite()` will do the same as `bootLogo()` but will use `drawCompressed()`, or `Sprites / SpritesB` class `drawSelfMasked()` or `drawOverwrite()` functions respectively, instead of `drawBitmap()`, to render the logo. If the sketch uses one of these functions, then using the boot logo function that also uses it may reduce code size. It's best to try each of them to see which one produces the smallest size.

- `bootLogoText()` can be used in place of `bootLogo()` in the case where the sketch uses text functions. It renders the logo as text instead of as a bitmap (so doesn't look as good).

- `safeMode()` can be used in place of `flashlight()` as a safeguard to allow uploading a new sketch when the bootloader “magic key” problem is an issue. It only lights the red RGB LED, so you don’t get the bright light that is the primary purpose of `flashlight()`.

It is also possible to replace the boot logo drawing function with one that uses a different bitmap rendering function used elsewhere in your sketch. This may save memory by using this bitmap function for the logo, instead of the logo using a separate function that only ends up being used once. For example, if you use the `ArdBitmap` library's `drawCompressed()` function in your sketch, you could convert the `ARDUBOY` logo to `Ardbitmap` compressed format, and create `drawLogoArdCompressed()` and `bootLogoArdCompressed()` functions:

```
#include "arduboy.h"

void drawLogoArdCompressed(int16_t y)
{
  ardbitmap.drawCompressed(20, y, arduboy_logo_ardbitmap, 
                          WHITE, ALIGN_CENTER, MIRROR_NONE);
}

void bootLogoArdCompressed()
{
  if (arduboy.bootLogoShell(drawLogoArdCompressed))
  {
    arduboy.bootLogoExtra();
  }
}

void setup()
{
  arduboy.beginDoFirst();
  bootLogoArdCompressed();
}
```
arduboy.waitNoButtons();
// Additional setup code...
}

The ARDUBOY logo, in PNG format, is included in the library repository as file:
extras/assets/arduboy_logo.png

### 1.4.4.4 Use the SpritesB class instead of Sprites

The SpritesB class has functions identical to the Sprites class. The difference is that SpritesB is optimized for small code size rather than execution speed. If you want to use the sprites functions, and the slower speed of SpritesB doesn't affect your sketch, you may be able to use it to gain some code space.

Even if the speed is acceptable when using SpritesB, you should still try using Sprites. In some cases Sprites will produce less code than SpritesB, notably when only one of the functions is used.

You can easily switch between using Sprites or SpritesB by using one or the other to create an object instance:

```cpp
Sprites sprites; // Use this to optimize for execution speed
SpritesB sprites; // Use this to (likely) optimize for code size
```

### 1.4.4.5 Eliminate the USB stack code

**Warning:** Although this will free up a fair amount of code and some RAM space, without an active USB interface uploader programs will be unable to automatically force a reset to invoke the bootloader. This means the user will have to manually initiate a reset in order to upload a new sketch. This can be an inconvenience or even frustrating for a user, due to the fact that timing the sequence can sometimes be tricky. Therefore, using this technique should be considered as a last resort. If it is used, the sketch documentation should state clearly what will be involved to upload a new sketch.

The ARDUBOY_NO_USB macro is used to eliminate the USB code. The `exitToBootloader()` function is available to make it easier for a user to invoke the bootloader. For more details, see the documentation provided for these.

### 1.5 What's different from Arduboy library V1.1

(These notes apply to when the Arduboy2 library was first released. There will have been many additional changes, enhancements and features added to Arduboy2 since then.)

A main goal of Arduboy2 is to provide ways in which more code space can be freed for use by large sketches. Another goal is to allow methods other than the tunes functions to be used to produce sounds. Arduboy2 remains substantially compatible with Arduboy library V1.1, which was the latest stable release at the time of the fork. Arduboy2 is based on the code targeted for Arduboy library V1.2, which was still in development and unreleased at the time it was forked.

Main differences between Arduboy2 and Arduboy V1.1 are:

- The ArduboyTunes subclass, which provided the `tunes.xxx()` functions, has been removed. It's functionality is available in a separate ArduboyPlaytune library. By removing these functions, more code space may become available because interrupt routines and other support code was being compiled in even if a sketch didn't make use them. Another benefit is that without the automatic installation of timer interrupt service routines, other audio generating functions and libraries, that need access to the same interrupts, can now be used. Removal of the tunes functions is the main API incompatibility with Arduboy V1.1. Sketches written to use `tunes` functions will need some minor modifications in order to make them work with Arduboy2 plus ArduboyPlaytune, ArduboyTones, or some other audio library.

- Arduboy library V1.1 uses timer 1 for the `tunes` functions. This causes problems when attempting to control the Arduboy's RGB LED using PWM, such as with `setRGBled()`, because it also requires timer 1. Since the `tunes` functionality has been removed from Arduboy2, there are no problems with using the RGB LED (except those caused by the RGB LED being incorrectly installed). Of course, using an external library that uses timer 1, such as ArduboyPlaytune, may reintroduce the problems. However, using a library that doesn't use timer 1, such as ArduboyTones, is now an option.
1.6 Migrating a sketch from Arduboy library V1.1 to Arduboy2

The code to generate text output, using `setCursor()`, `print()`, etc., can be removed to free up code space, if a sketch doesn't use any text functions. The Arduboy2 class includes the text functions but using the Arduboy2Base class instead will eliminate them. With text functions included, the font table and some support functions are always compiled in even if not used. The API for using text functions is the same as Arduboy V1.1 with some additional functions added:

- `setTextColor()` and `setTextBackground()` allow for printing black text on a white background.
- `getCursorX()` and `getCursorY()` allow for determining the current text cursor position.
- The `clear()` function will now reset the text cursor to home position 0, 0.

A new feature has been added which allows the audio on/off flag in system EEPROM to be configured by the user when the sketch starts. The flag is used by the Arduboy and Arduboy2 audio subclass, along with external sound functions and libraries, to provide a standardized sound mute capability. See the information above, under the heading Audio mute control, for more details.

The `color` parameter, which is the last parameter for most of the drawing functions, has been made optional and will default to WHITE if not included in the call. This doesn't save any code but has been added as a convenience, since most drawing functions are called with WHITE specified.

A new function `digitalWriteRGB()` has been added to control the RGB LED digitally instead of using PWM. This uses less code if just turning the RGB LEDs fully on or off is all that's required.

The `beginNoLogo()` function is not included. This function could be used in Arduboy V1.1 in place of `begin()` to suppress the displaying of the ARDUBOY logo and thus free up the code that it required. Instead, Arduboy2 allows a sketch to call `boot()` and then add in any extra features that `begin()` provides by calling their functions directly after `boot()`, if desired.

The ArduboyCore and ArduboyAudio base classes, previously only available to, and used to derive, the Arduboy class, have been made publicly available for the benefit of developers who may wish to use them as the base of an entirely new library. This change doesn't affect the existing API.

As of version 2.1.0 functionality from the Team A.R.G. Arglib library has been added:

- The sprite drawing functions, collision detection functions, and button handling functions that Team A.R.G. incorporated from the ArduboyExtra project. The `poll()` function was renamed `pollButtons()` for clarity. The Sprites class doesn't require a parameter for the constructor, whereas in Arglib a pointer to an Arduboy class object is required.
- The `drawCompressed()` function, which allows compressed bitmaps to be drawn. Saving bitmaps in compressed form may reduce overall sketch size.

Team A.R.G. has now migrated all of their games and demos to use the Arduboy2 library.

1.6 Migrating a sketch from Arduboy library V1.1 to Arduboy2

Since the Arduboy2 library can coexist in the Arduino IDE alongside the Arduboy library V1.1, a currently working sketch that uses Arduboy V1.1 doesn't have to be migrated to Arduboy2. However, if you want to switch a sketch to Arduboy2 for further development, in order to take advantage of any of the changes and enhancements, it's generally relatively easy.

The Arduboy2 library, for the most part, is compatible with Arduboy library V1.1 but migrating a sketch to Arduboy2 will require some small changes, and more so if it uses the `tunes` functions, such as `tunes.tone()` or `tunes.play←Score()`.

1.6.1 Required changes

The first thing to do is change the include for the library header file:

```
#include <Arduboy.h>
```

becomes

```
#include <Arduboy2.h>
```

If it was "Arduboy.h" (in quotes), it's still better to change it to `<Arduboy2.h>` (in angle brackets).
The same thing has to be done with creating the library object. (If the object name isn’t `arduboy`, keep whatever name is used.):

```cpp
Arduboy arduboy;
```

becomes

```cpp
Arduboy2 arduboy;
```

If the sketch doesn’t use any `tunes` functions, there’s a good chance this is all that has to be done to make it compile.

### 1.6.2 Sketch uses only `tunes.tone()` for sound

If the sketch has sound but only uses `tunes.tone()`, solutions are:

#### 1.6.2.1 Solution 1: Switch to using Arduino `tone()`

An easy change is to use the Arduino built-in `tone()` function. You can add a function to the sketch that wraps `tone()` so that it works like `tunes.tone()`, like so:

```cpp
// Wrap the Arduino tone() function so that the pin doesn’t have to be specified each time. Also, don’t play if audio is set to off.
void playTone(unsigned int frequency, unsigned long duration)
{
  if (arduboy.audio.enabled() == true)
  {
    tone(PIN_SPEAKER_1, frequency, duration);
  }
}
```

You then change all `tunes.tone()` calls to `playTone()` calls using the same parameter values. For example:

```cpp
arduboy.tunes.tone(1000, 250);
```

becomes

```cpp
playTone(1000, 250);
```

#### 1.6.2.2 Solution 2: Switch to using the ArduboyTones library

Changing to the `ArduboyTones` library is slightly more complicated. The advantage is that it will generate less code than using `tone()` and will also allow you to easily enhance the sketch to play tone sequences instead of just single tones. `ArduboyTones` can also play each tone at either normal or a higher volume.

You have to add an include for the `ArduboyTones` header file:

```cpp
#include <ArduboyTones.h>
```

You then have to create an object for the `ArduboyTones` class and pass it a pointer to the `arduboy2.audio.enabled()` function. This must go after the creation of the `Arduboy2` object, like so:

```cpp
Arduboy2 arduboy;
ArduboyTones sound(arduboy.audio.enabled);
```

You then change all `Arduboy` `tunes.tone()` calls to `ArduboyTones` `tone()` calls using the same parameter values. For example:

```cpp
arduboy.tunes.tone(1000, 250);
```

becomes

```cpp
sound.tone(1000, 250);
```

See the `ArduboyTones` README file for more information on installing and using it.

#### 1.6.2.3 Solution 3: Switch to using the ArduboyPlaytune library.

See the following for how to do this:

### 1.6.3 Sketch uses `tunes.playScore()`

If the sketch uses `tunes.playScore()`, probably the easiest solution is to use the `ArduboyPlaytune` library. `ArduboyPlaytune` is essentially the code that was in the Arduboy V1.1 `tunes` subclass, which has been removed from `Arduboy2`. It’s been cleaned up and a few enhancements have been added, but all the Arduboy V1.1 `tunes` functions are available.

You have to add an include for the `ArduboyPlaytune` header file:

```cpp
#include <ArduboyPlaytune.h>
```

You then have to create an object for the `ArduboyPlaytune` class and pass it a pointer to the `arduboy2.audio.enabled()` function. This must go after the creation of the `Arduboy2` object, like so:

```cpp
Arduboy2 arduboy;
ArduboyPlaytune tunes(arduboy.audio.enabled);
```

The sound channels must then be initialized and assigned to the speaker pins. This code would go in the `setup()` function:

```cpp
// audio setup
```
If you name the ArduboyPlaytune object `tunes` as shown above, then you just have to remove the Arduboy object name from any `tunes` calls. For example:

```
arduboy.tunes.playScore(mySong);
```

becomes

```
tunes.playScore(mySong);
```

See the [ArduboyPlaytune library](https://arduboy.github.io/arduboy-library/) documentation for more information.

If you don’t need to play scores containing two parts, and don’t require tones to be played in parallel with a score that’s playing, then as an alternative to using `ArduboyPlaytune` you may wish to consider switching to `ArduboyTones`. This may require a bit of work because any `ArduboyPlaytune` scores would have to be converted to `ArduboyTones` format. It would involve changing note numbers to frequencies. This could be simplified by using the provided `NOTE_` defines. Also, durations would have to be converted, including adding silent “rest” tones as necessary. The benefit of using `ArduboyTones` would be reduced code size and possibly easier addition of new sequences without the need of a MIDI to Playtune format converter.

### Sketch uses the `beginNoLogo()` function instead of `begin()`

The `beginNoLogo()` function has been removed. `beginNoLogo()` can be replaced with `begin()`, since users can choose to suppress the logo sequence using the RIGHT button or by setting a flag in system EEPROM. If using `begin()` results in the sketch program memory size being too large, `beginDoFirst()` or `boot()` can be used with additional functions following it to add back in desired boot functionality. See the information above, under the heading Substitute or remove boot up features, for more details. Assuming the object is named `arduboy`, an equivalent replacement for `beginNoLogo()` would be:

```
arduboy.beginDoFirst();
arduboy.waitNoButtons();
```
Chapter 2

Software License Agreements

Licensed under the BSD 3-clause license:

Arduboy2 library:
Copyright (c) 2016-2020, Scott Allen
All rights reserved.

The Arduboy2 library was forked from the Arduboy library:
https://github.com/Arduboy/Arduboy
Copyright (c) 2016, Kevin "Arduboy" Bates
Copyright (c) 2016, Chris Martinez
Copyright (c) 2016, Josh Goebel
Copyright (c) 2016, Scott Allen
All rights reserved.
which is in turn partially based on the Adafruit_SSD1306 library
https://github.com/adafruit/Adafruit_SSD1306
Copyright (c) 2012, Adafruit Industries
All rights reserved.

SetSystemEEPROM example sketch:
Copyright (c) 2018-2020, Scott Allen
All rights reserved.

Redistribution and use in source and binary forms, with or without
modification, are permitted provided that the following conditions are met:
1. Redistributions of source code must retain the above copyright
notice, this list of conditions and the following disclaimer.
2. Redistributions in binary form must reproduce the above copyright
notice, this list of conditions and the following disclaimer in the
documentation and/or other materials provided with the distribution.
3. Neither the name of the copyright holders nor the
names of its contributors may be used to endorse or promote products
derived from this software without specific prior written permission.

THIS SOFTWARE IS PROVIDED BY THE COPYRIGHT HOLDERS ‘‘AS IS’’ AND ANY
EXPRESS OR IMPLIED WARRANTIES, INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, THE IMPLIED
WARRANTIES OF MERCHANTABILITY AND FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE ARE
DISCLAIMED. IN NO EVENT SHALL THE COPYRIGHT HOLDER BE LIABLE FOR ANY
DIRECT, INDIRECT, INCIDENTAL, SPECIAL, EXEMPLARY, OR CONSEQUENTIAL DAMAGES
(INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, PROCUREMENT OF SUBSTITUTE GOODS OR SERVICES;
LOSS OF USE, DATA, OR PROFITS; OR BUSINESS INTERRUPTION) HOWEVER CAUSED AND
ON ANY THEORY OF LIABILITY, WHETHER IN CONTRACT, STRICT LIABILITY, OR TORT
(INCLUDING NEGLIGENCE OR OTHERWISE) ARISING IN ANY WAY OUT OF THE USE OF THIS
SOFTWARE, EVEN IF ADVISED OF THE POSSIBILITY OF SUCH DAMAGE.

Licensed under the BSD 2-clause license:

Portions of the Arduboy library, and thus portions of the Arduboy2 library,
based on the Adafruit-GFX library:
https://github.com/adafruit/Adafruit-GFX-Library
Copyright (c) 2012 Adafruit Industries
All rights reserved.
Redistribution and use in source and binary forms, with or without modification, are permitted provided that the following conditions are met:

- Redistributions of source code must retain the above copyright notice, this list of conditions and the following disclaimer.
- Redistributions in binary form must reproduce the above copyright notice, this list of conditions and the following disclaimer in the documentation and/or other materials provided with the distribution.

THIS SOFTWARE IS PROVIDED BY THE COPYRIGHT HOLDERS AND CONTRIBUTORS "AS IS" AND ANY EXPRESS OR IMPLIED WARRANTIES, INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, THE IMPLIED WARRANTIES OF MERCHANTABILITY AND FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE ARE DISCLAIMED. IN NO EVENT SHALL THE COPYRIGHT HOLDER OR CONTRIBUTORS BE LIABLE FOR ANY DIRECT, INDIRECT, INCIDENTAL, SPECIAL, EXEMPLARY, OR CONSEQUENTIAL DAMAGES (INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, PROCUREMENT OF SUBSTITUTE GOODS OR SERVICES; LOSS OF USE, DATA, OR PROFITS; OR BUSINESS INTERRUPTION) HOWEVER CAUSED AND ON ANY THEORY OF LIABILITY, WHETHER IN CONTRACT, STRICT LIABILITY, OR TORT (INCLUDING NEGLIGENCE OR OTHERWISE) ARISING IN ANY WAY OUT OF THE USE OF THIS SOFTWARE, EVEN IF ADVISED OF THE POSSIBILITY OF SUCH DAMAGE.

Licensed under the MIT license:

Code from ArduboyExtra:
https://github.com/yyyc514/ArduboyExtra
Copyright (c) 2015 Josh Goebel

Code for drawing compressed bitmaps:
Copyright (c) 2016 TEAM a.r.g.

Permission is hereby granted, free of charge, to any person obtaining a copy of this software and associated documentation files (the "Software"), to deal in the Software without restriction, including without limitation the rights to use, copy, modify, merge, publish, distribute, sublicense, and/or sell copies of the Software, and to permit persons to whom the Software is furnished to do so, subject to the following conditions:

The above copyright notice and this permission notice shall be included in all copies or substantial portions of the Software.

THE SOFTWARE IS PROVIDED "AS IS", WITHOUT WARRANTY OF ANY KIND, EXPRESS OR IMPLIED, INCLUDING BUT NOT LIMITED TO THE WARRANTIES OF MERCHANTABILITY, FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE AND NONINFRINGEMENT. IN NO EVENT SHALL THE AUTHORS OR COPYRIGHT HOLDERS BE LIABLE FOR ANY CLAIM, DAMAGES OR OTHER LIABILITY, WHETHER IN AN ACTION OF CONTRACT, TORT OR OTHERWISE, ARISING FROM, OUT OF OR IN CONNECTION WITH THE SOFTWARE OR THE USE OR OTHER DEALINGS IN THE SOFTWARE.

Licensed under the GNU LGPL license:

https://www.gnu.org/licenses/old-licenses/lgpl-2.1.en.html

ArduBreakout example sketch:
Original work:
Copyright (c) 2011 Sebastian Gosciik
All rights reserved.
Modified work:
Copyright (c) 2016 Scott Allen
All rights reserved.

Buttons and HelloWorld example sketches:
Copyright (c) 2015 David Martinez
All rights reserved.

This work is free software; you can redistribute it and/or modify it under the terms of the GNU Lesser General Public License as published by the Free Software Foundation; either version 2.1 of the License, or (at your option) any later version.

This library is distributed in the hope that it will be useful, but WITHOUT ANY WARRANTY; without even the implied warranty of

Generated on Tue Sep 29 2020 14:29:54 for Arduboy2 Library by Doxygen
MERCHANDABILITY or FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE. See the GNU Lesser General Public License for more details.

Licensed under the zlib license:

LodePNG
https://github.com/lvandeve/lodepng
Copyright (c) 2005-2020 Lode Vandevenne
(Used by the Cabi program)

This software is provided 'as-is', without any express or implied warranty. In no event will the authors be held liable for any damages arising from the use of this software.

Permission is granted to anyone to use this software for any purpose, including commercial applications, and to alter it and redistribute it freely, subject to the following restrictions:

1. The origin of this software must not be misrepresented; you must not claim that you wrote the original software. If you use this software in a product, an acknowledgment in the product documentation would be appreciated but is not required.
2. Altered source versions must be plainly marked as such, and must not be misrepresented as being the original software.
3. This notice may not be removed or altered from any source distribution.

Placed in the public domain using Creative Commons CC0:
https://creativecommons.org/publicdomain/zero/1.0/

BeepDemo example sketch:
By Scott Allen

FontDemo example sketch:
By Scott Allen

RGBled example sketch:
By Scott Allen

Cabi PNG file converter program:
By zep

Creative Commons Legal Code

CC0 1.0 Universal

CREATIVE COMMONS CORPORATION IS NOT A LAW FIRM AND DOES NOT PROVIDE LEGAL SERVICES. DISTRIBUTION OF THIS DOCUMENT DOES NOT CREATE AN ATTORNEY-CLIENT RELATIONSHIP. CREATIVE COMMONS PROVIDES THIS INFORMATION ON AN "AS-IS" BASIS. CREATIVE COMMONS MAKES NO WARRANTIES REGARDING THE USE OF THIS DOCUMENT OR THE INFORMATION OR WORKS PROVIDED HEREUNDER, AND DISCLAIMS LIABILITY FOR DAMAGES RESULTING FROM THE USE OF THIS DOCUMENT OR THE INFORMATION OR WORKS PROVIDED HEREUNDER.

Statement of Purpose

The laws of most jurisdictions throughout the world automatically confer exclusive Copyright and Related Rights (defined below) upon the creator and subsequent owner(s) (each and all, an "owner") of an original work of authorship and/or a database (each, a "Work").

Certain owners wish to permanently relinquish those rights to a Work for the purpose of contributing to a commons of creative, cultural and scientific works ("Commons") that the public can reliably and without fear of later claims of infringement build upon, modify, incorporate in other works, reuse and redistribute as freely as possible in any form whatsoever and for any purposes, including without limitation commercial purposes. These owners may contribute to the Commons to promote the ideal of a free culture and the further production of creative, cultural and scientific works, or to gain reputation or greater distribution for their Work in part through the use and efforts of others.
For these and/or other purposes and motivations, and without any expectation of additional consideration or compensation, the person associating CC0 with a Work (the "Affirmer"), to the extent that he or she is an owner of Copyright and Related Rights in the Work, voluntarily elects to apply CC0 to the Work and publicly distribute the Work under its terms, with knowledge of his or her Copyright and Related Rights in the Work and the meaning and intended legal effect of CC0 on those rights.

1. Copyright and Related Rights. A Work made available under CC0 may be protected by copyright and related or neighboring rights ("Copyright and Related Rights"). Copyright and Related Rights include, but are not limited to, the following:

i. the right to reproduce, adapt, distribute, perform, display, communicate, and translate a Work;
ii. moral rights retained by the original author(s) and/or performer(s);
iii. publicity and privacy rights pertaining to a person's image or likeness depicted in a Work;
iv. rights protecting against unfair competition in regards to a Work, subject to the limitations in paragraph 4(a), below;
v. rights protecting the extraction, dissemination, use and reuse of data in a Work;
vi. database rights (such as those arising under Directive 96/9/EC of the European Parliament and of the Council of 11 March 1996 on the legal protection of databases, and under any national implementation thereof, including any amended or successor version of such directive); and
vii. other similar, equivalent or corresponding rights throughout the world based on applicable law or treaty, and any national implementations thereof.

2. Waiver. To the greatest extent permitted by, but not in contravention of, applicable law, Affirmer hereby overtly, fully, permanently, irrevocably and unconditionally waives, abandons, and surrenders all of Affirmer's Copyright and Related Rights and associated claims and causes of action, whether now known or unknown (including existing as well as future claims and causes of action), in the Work (i) in all territories worldwide, (ii) for the maximum duration provided by applicable law or treaty (including future time extensions), (iii) in any current or future medium and for any number of copies, and (iv) for any purpose whatsoever, including without limitation commercial, advertising or promotional purposes (the "Waiver"). Affirmer makes the Waiver for the benefit of each member of the public at large and to the detriment of Affirmer's heirs and successors, fully intending that such Waiver shall not be subject to revocation, rescission, cancellation, termination, or any other legal or equitable action to disrupt the quiet enjoyment of the Work by the public as contemplated by Affirmer's express Statement of Purpose.

3. Public License Fallback. Should any part of the Waiver for any reason be judged legally invalid or ineffective under applicable law, then the Waiver shall be preserved to the maximum extent permitted taking into account Affirmer's express Statement of Purpose. In addition, to the extent the Waiver is so judged Affirmer hereby grants to each affected person a royalty-free, non transferable, non sublicensable, non exclusive, irrevocable and unconditional license to exercise Affirmer's Copyright and Related Rights in the Work (i) in all territories worldwide, (ii) for the maximum duration provided by applicable law or treaty (including future time extensions), (iii) in any current or future medium and for any number of copies, and (iv) for any purpose whatsoever, including without limitation commercial, advertising or promotional purposes (the "License"). The License shall be deemed effective as of the date CC0 was applied by Affirmer to the Work. Should any part of the License for any reason be judged legally invalid or ineffective under applicable law, such partial invalidity or ineffectiveness shall not invalidate the remainder of the License, and in such case Affirmer hereby affirms that he or she will not (i) exercise any of his or her remaining Copyright and Related Rights in the Work or (ii) assert any associated claims and causes of action with respect to the Work, in either case contrary to Affirmer's express Statement of Purpose.

4. Limitations and Disclaimers.
a. No trademark or patent rights held by Affirmer are waived, abandoned, surrendered, licensed or otherwise affected by this document.

b. Affirmer offers the Work as-is and makes no representations or warranties of any kind concerning the Work, express, implied, statutory or otherwise, including without limitation warranties of title, merchantability, fitness for a particular purpose, non infringement, or the absence of latent or other defects, accuracy, or the present or absence of errors, whether or not discoverable, all to the greatest extent permissible under applicable law.

c. Affirmer disclaims responsibility for clearing rights of other persons that may apply to the Work or any use thereof, including without limitation any person’s Copyright and Related Rights in the Work. Further, Affirmer disclaims responsibility for obtaining any necessary consents, permissions or other rights required for any use of the Work.

d. Affirmer understands and acknowledges that Creative Commons is not a party to this document and has no duty or obligation with respect to this CC0 or use of the Work.
### Chapter 3

Hierarchical Index

#### 3.1 Class Hierarchy

This inheritance list is sorted roughly, but not completely, alphabetically:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Class</th>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Arduboy2Audio</td>
<td>74</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Arduboy2Core</td>
<td>117</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Arduboy2Base</td>
<td>76</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Arduboy2</td>
<td>23</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BeepPin1</td>
<td>129</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BeepPin2</td>
<td>133</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Point</td>
<td>135</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Print</td>
<td>136</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Arduboy2</td>
<td>23</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Rect</td>
<td>137</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sprites</td>
<td>139</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SpritesB</td>
<td>143</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Chapter 4

Class Index

4.1 Class List

Here are the classes, structs, unions and interfaces with brief descriptions:

- **Arduboy2**
  The main functions provided for writing sketches for the Arduboy, *including* text output 23

- **Arduboy2Audio**
  Provide speaker and sound control 74

- **Arduboy2Base**
  The main functions provided for writing sketches for the Arduboy, *minus* text output 76

- **Arduboy2Core**
  Lower level functions generally dealing directly with the hardware 117

- **BeepPin1**
  Play simple square wave tones using speaker pin 1 129

- **BeepPin2**
  Play simple square wave tones using speaker pin 2 133

- **Point**
  An object to define a single point for collision functions 135

- **Print**
  The Arduino Print class is available for writing text to the screen buffer 136

- **Rect**
  A rectangle object for collision functions 137

- **Sprites**
  A class for drawing animated sprites from image and mask bitmaps 139

- **SpritesB**
  A class for drawing animated sprites from image and mask bitmaps. Optimized for small code size 143
Chapter 5

File Index

5.1 File List

Here is a list of all documented files with brief descriptions:

- **Arduboy2.cpp**
  - The Arduboy2Base and Arduboy2 classes and support objects and definitions
  - Page 147

- **Arduboy2.h**
  - The Arduboy2Base and Arduboy2 classes and support objects and definitions
  - Page 147

- **Arduboy2Audio.cpp**
  - The Arduboy2Audio class for speaker and sound control
  - Page 150

- **Arduboy2Audio.h**
  - The Arduboy2Audio class for speaker and sound control
  - Page 150

- **Arduboy2Beep.cpp**
  - Classes to generate simple square wave tones on the Arduboy speaker pins
  - Page 151

- **Arduboy2Beep.h**
  - Classes to generate simple square wave tones on the Arduboy speaker pins
  - Page 152

- **Arduboy2Core.cpp**
  - The Arduboy2Core class for Arduboy hardware initialization and control
  - Page 152

- **Arduboy2Core.h**
  - The Arduboy2Core class for Arduboy hardware initialization and control
  - Page 153

- **Arduboy2Data.cpp**
  - Constant data definitions for the Arduboy2 and Arduboy2Base classes
  - Page 157

- **Sprites.cpp**
  - A class for drawing animated sprites from image and mask bitmaps
  - Page 157

- **Sprites.h**
  - A class for drawing animated sprites from image and mask bitmaps
  - Page 158

- **SpritesB.cpp**
  - A class for drawing animated sprites from image and mask bitmaps. Optimized for small code size
  - Page 159

- **SpritesB.h**
  - A class for drawing animated sprites from image and mask bitmaps. Optimized for small code size
  - Page 160

- **SpritesCommon.h**
  - Common header file for sprite functions
  - Page 160
Chapter 6

Class Documentation

6.1 Arduboy2 Class Reference

The main functions provided for writing sketches for the Arduboy, including text output.
#include <Arduboy2.h>

Inheritance diagram for Arduboy2:
Collaboration diagram for Arduboy2:

![Collaboration diagram]

**Public Member Functions**

- void **begin ()**
  
  Initialize the hardware, display the boot logo, provide boot utilities, etc.
- void **bootLogo ()**
  
  Display the boot logo sequence using **drawBitmap()**.
- void **bootLogoCompressed ()**
  
  Display the boot logo sequence using **drawCompressed()**.
- void **bootLogoSpritesSelfMasked ()**
  
  Display the boot logo sequence using **Sprites::drawSelfMasked()**.
- void **bootLogoSpritesOverwrite ()**
  
  Display the boot logo sequence using **Sprites::drawOverwrite()**.
- void **bootLogoSpritesBSelfMasked ()**
  
  Display the boot logo sequence using **SpritesB::drawSelfMasked()**.
- void **bootLogoSpritesBOverwrite ()**
  
  Display the boot logo sequence using **SpritesB::drawOverwrite()**.
- void **bootLogoText ()**
  
  Display the boot logo sequence using printed text instead of a bitmap.
- void **bootLogoExtra ()**
  
  Show the unit name at the bottom of the boot logo screen.
- virtual size_t **write (uint8_t)**
  
  Write a single character at the current text cursor position.

**Static Public Member Functions**

- static void **drawChar (int16_t x, int16_t y, uint8_t c, uint8_t color, uint8_t bg, uint8_t t size)**
  
  Draw a single character at the specified location in the screen buffer.
- static void **setCursor (int16_t x, int16_t y)**
  
  Set the location of the text cursor.
- static void **setCursorX (int16_t x)**
  
  Set the X coordinate of the text cursor location.
- static void **setCursorY (int16_t y)**
Set the Y coordinate of the text cursor location.

• static int16_t getCursorY()
  Get the Y coordinate of the current text cursor position.

• static int16_t getCursorX()
  Get the X coordinate of the current text cursor position.

• static void setTextColor(uint8_t color)
  Set the text foreground color.

• static uint8_t getTextColor()
  Get the currently set text foreground color.

• static void setTextBackground(uint8_t bg)
  Set the text background color.

• static uint8_t getTextBackground()
  Get the currently set text background color.

• static void setTextSize(uint8_t s)
  Set the text character size.

• static uint8_t getTextSize()
  Get the currently set text size.

• static void setTextWrap(bool w)
  Set or disable text wrap mode.

• static bool getTextWrap()
  Get the currently set text wrap mode.

• static void setTextRawMode(bool raw)
  Set or disable text raw mode, allowing special characters to be displayed.

• static bool getTextRawMode()
  Get the current state of text raw mode.

• static void clear()
  Clear the display buffer and set the text cursor to location 0, 0.

• static constexpr uint8_t getCharacterWidth(uint8_t textSize=1)
  Get the width, in pixels, of a character in the library’s font.

• static constexpr uint8_t getCharacterSpacing(uint8_t textSize=1)
  Get the number of pixels added after each character to provide spacing.

• static constexpr uint8_t getCharacterHeight(uint8_t textSize=1)
  Get the height, in pixels, of a character in the library’s font.

• static constexpr uint8_t getLineSpacing(uint8_t textSize=1)
  Get the number of pixels added below each character to provide line spacing.

• static void beginDoFirst()
  Helper function that calls the initial functions used by begin().

• static void flashlight()
  Turn the RGB LED and display fully on to act as a small flashlight/torch.

• static void systemButtons()
  Handle buttons held on startup for system control.

• static bool bootLogoShell(void(&drawLogo)(int16_t))
  Display the boot logo sequence using the provided function.

• static void waitNoButtons()
  Wait until all buttons have been released.

• static void fillScreen(uint8_t color=WHITE)
  Fill the screen buffer with the specified color.

• static void display()
  Copy the contents of the display buffer to the display.

• static void display(bool clear)
  Copy the contents of the display buffer to the display. The display buffer can optionally be cleared.
• static void drawPixel (int16_t x, int16_t y, uint8_t color=WHITE)
    Set a single pixel in the display buffer to the specified color.

• static uint8_t getPixel (uint8_t x, uint8_t y)
    Returns the state of the given pixel in the screen buffer.

• static void drawCircle (int16_t x0, int16_t y0, uint8_t r, uint8_t color=WHITE)
    Draw a circle of a given radius.

• static void fillCircle (int16_t x0, int16_t y0, uint8_t r, uint8_t color=WHITE)
    Draw a filled-in circle of a given radius.

• static void drawLine (int16_t x0, int16_t y0, int16_t x1, int16_t y1, uint8_t color=WHITE)
    Draw a line between two specified points.

• static void drawFastVLine (int16_t x, int16_t y, uint8_t h, uint8_t color=WHITE)
    Draw a vertical line.

• static void drawFastHLine (int16_t x, int16_t y, uint8_t w, uint8_t color=WHITE)
    Draw a horizontal line.

• static void drawRect (int16_t x, int16_t y, uint8_t w, uint8_t h, uint8_t color=WHITE)
    Draw a rectangle of a specified width and height.

• static void fillRect (int16_t x, int16_t y, uint8_t w, uint8_t h, uint8_t color=WHITE)
    Draw a filled-in rectangle of a specified width and height.

• static void drawRoundRect (int16_t x, int16_t y, uint8_t w, uint8_t h, uint8_t r, uint8_t color=WHITE)
    Draw a rectangle with rounded corners.

• static void fillRoundRect (int16_t x, int16_t y, uint8_t w, uint8_t h, uint8_t r, uint8_t color=WHITE)
    Draw a filled-in rectangle with rounded corners.

• static void drawTriangle (int16_t x0, int16_t y0, int16_t x1, int16_t y1, int16_t x2, int16_t y2, uint8_t color=WHITE)
    Draw a triangle given the coordinates of each corner.

• static void fillTriangle (int16_t x0, int16_t y0, int16_t x1, int16_t y1, int16_t x2, int16_t y2, uint8_t color=WHITE)
    Draw a filled-in triangle given the coordinates of each corner.

• static void drawBitmap (int16_t x, int16_t y, const uint8_t *bitmap, uint8_t w, uint8_t h, uint8_t color=WHITE)
    Draw a bitmap from an array in program memory.

• static void drawSlowXYBitmap (int16_t x, int16_t y, const uint8_t *bitmap, uint8_t w, uint8_t h, uint8_t color=WHITE)
    Draw a bitmap from a horizontally oriented array in program memory.

• static void drawCompressed (int16_t sx, int16_t sy, const uint8_t *bitmap, uint8_t color=WHITE)
    Draw a bitmap from an array of compressed data.

• static uint8_t *getBuffer ()
    Get a pointer to the display buffer in RAM.

• static void initRandomSeed ()
    Seed the random number generator with a random value.

• static void setFrameRate (uint8_t rate)
    Set the frame rate used by the frame control functions.

• static void setFrameDuration (uint8_t duration)
    Set the frame rate, used by the frame control functions, by giving the duration of each frame.

• static bool nextFrame ()
    Indicate that it’s time to render the next frame.

• static bool nextFrameDEV ()
    Indicate that it’s time to render the next frame, and visually indicate if the code is running slower than the desired
    frame rate. FOR USE DURING DEVELOPMENT

• static bool everyXFrames (uint8_t frames)
    Indicate if the specified number of frames has elapsed.

• static int cpuLoad ()
    Return the load on the CPU as a percentage.
• static bool pressed (uint8_t buttons)
  Test if the all of the specified buttons are pressed.
• static bool anyPressed (uint8_t buttons)
  Test if any of the specified buttons are pressed.
• static bool notPressed (uint8_t buttons)
  Test if the specified buttons are not pressed.
• static void pollButtons ()
  Poll the buttons and track their state over time.
• static bool justPressed (uint8_t button)
  Check if a button has just been pressed.
• static bool justReleased (uint8_t button)
  Check if a button has just been released.
• static bool collide (Point point, Rect rect)
  Test if a point falls within a rectangle.
• static bool collide (Rect rect1, Rect rect2)
  Test if a rectangle is intersecting with another rectangle.
• static uint16_t readUnitID ()
  Read the unit ID from system EEPROM.
• static void writeUnitID (uint16_t id)
  Write a unit ID to system EEPROM.
• static uint8_t readUnitName (char ∗name)
  Read the unit name from system EEPROM.
• static void writeUnitName (const char ∗name)
  Write a unit name to system EEPROM.
• static bool readShowBootLogoFlag ()
  Read the "Show Boot Logo" flag in system EEPROM.
• static void writeShowBootLogoFlag (bool val)
  Write the "Show Boot Logo" flag in system EEPROM.
• static bool readShowUnitNameFlag ()
  Read the "Show Unit Name" flag in system EEPROM.
• static void writeShowUnitNameFlag (bool val)
  Write the "Show Unit Name" flag in system EEPROM.
• static bool readShowBootLogoLEDsFlag ()
  Read the "Show LEDs with boot logo" flag in system EEPROM.
• static void writeShowBootLogoLEDsFlag (bool val)
  Write the "Show LEDs with boot logo" flag in system EEPROM.
• static void idle ()
  Idle the CPU to save power.
• static void LCDDataMode ()
  Put the display into data mode.
• static void LCDCommandMode ()
  Put the display into command mode.
• static void SPItransfer (uint8_t data)
  Transfer a byte to the display.
• static uint8_t SPItransferAndRead (uint8_t data)
  Transfer a byte to, and read a byte from, the SPI bus.
• static void displayOff ()
  Turn the display off.
• static void displayOn ()
  Turn the display on.
• static constexpr uint8_t width ()
- Get the width of the display in pixels.
  - static constexpr uint8_t height ()
    Get the height of the display in pixels.
- static uint8_t buttonsState ()
  Get the current state of all buttons as a bitmask.
- static void paint8Pixels (uint8_t pixels)
  Paint 8 pixels vertically to the display.
- static void paintScreen (const uint8_t *image)
  Paints an entire image directly to the display from program memory.
- static void paintScreen (uint8_t image[], bool clear=false)
  Paints an entire image directly to the display from an array in RAM.
- static void blank ()
  Blank the display screen by setting all pixels off.
- static void invert (bool inverse)
  Invert the entire display or set it back to normal.
- static void allPixelsOn (bool on)
  Turn all display pixels on or display the buffer contents.
- static void flipVertical (bool flipped)
  Flip the display vertically or set it back to normal.
- static void flipHorizontal (bool flipped)
  Flip the display horizontally or set it back to normal.
- static void sendLCDCommand (uint8_t command)
  Send a single command byte to the display.
- static void setRGBled (uint8_t red, uint8_t green, uint8_t blue)
  Set the light output of the RGB LED.
- static void setRGBled (uint8_t color, uint8_t val)
  Set the brightness of one of the RGB LEDs without affecting the others.
- static void freeRGBled ()
  Relinquish analog control of the RGB LED.
- static void digitalWriteRGB (uint8_t red, uint8_t green, uint8_t blue)
  Set the RGB LEDs digitally, to either fully on or fully off.
- static void digitalWriteRGB (uint8_t color, uint8_t val)
  Set one of the RGB LEDs digitally, to either fully on or fully off.
- static void boot ()
  Initialize the Arduboy's hardware.
- static void safeMode ()
  Allow upload when the bootloader "magic number" could be corrupted.
- static unsigned long generateRandomSeed ()
  Create a seed suitable for use with a pseudorandom number generator.
- static void delayShort (uint16_t ms) __attribute__((noinline))
  Delay for the number of milliseconds, specified as a 16 bit value.
- static void exitToBootloader ()
  Exit the sketch and start the bootloader.
Static Public Attributes

- static const PROGMEM uint8_t font5x7 []
  The font used for text functions.
- static Arduboy2Audio audio
  An object created to provide audio control functions within this class.
- static uint16_t frameCount = 0
  A counter which is incremented once per frame.
- static uint8_t currentButtonState = 0
  Used by pollButtons() to hold the current button state.
- static uint8_t previousButtonState = 0
  Used by pollButtons() to hold the previous button state.
- static uint8_t sBuffer [(HEIGHT * WIDTH)/8]
  The display buffer array in RAM.
- static const PROGMEM uint8_t arduboy_logo []
  The bitmap for the ARDUBOY logo in drawBitmap() format.
- static const PROGMEM uint8_t arduboy_logo_compressed []
  The bitmap for the ARDUBOY logo in drawCompressed() format.
- static const PROGMEM uint8_t arduboy_logo_sprite []
  The bitmap for the ARDUBOY logo in Sprites class drawSelfMasked() or drawOverwrite() format.

6.1.1 Detailed Description

The main functions provided for writing sketches for the Arduboy, including text output.
This class is derived from Arduboy2Base. It provides text output functions in addition to all the functions inherited from Arduboy2Base.

Note

A friend class named Arduboy2Ex is declared by this class. The intention is to allow a sketch to create an Arduboy2Ex class which would have access to the private and protected members of the Arduboy2 class. It is hoped that this may eliminate the need to create an entire local copy of the library, in order to extend the functionality, in most circumstances.

See also

Arduboy2Base

Definition at line 1575 of file Arduboy2.h.

6.1.2 Member Function Documentation

6.1.2.1 allPixelsOn()

void Arduboy2Core::allPixelsOn (
  bool on ) [static], [inherited]

Turn all display pixels on or display the buffer contents.

Parameters

on  true turns all pixels on. false displays the contents of the hardware display buffer.

Calling this function with a value of true will override the contents of the hardware display buffer and turn all pixels on. The contents of the hardware buffer will remain unchanged. Calling this function with a value of false will set the normal state of displaying the contents of the hardware buffer.
display buffer.

Note

All pixels will be lit even if the display is in inverted mode.

See also
invert()

Definition at line 422 of file Arduboy2Core.cpp.

6.1.2.2 anyPressed()

bool Arduboy2Base::anyPressed (uint8_t buttons) [static], [inherited]

Test if any of the specified buttons are pressed.

Parameters

| buttons | A bit mask indicating which buttons to test. (Can be a single button) |

Returns

true if one or more of the buttons in the provided mask are currently pressed.

Read the state of the buttons and return true if one or more of the buttons in the specified mask are being pressed.

Example:

```cpp
if (anyPressed(RIGHT_BUTTON | LEFT_BUTTON))
```

Note

This function does not perform any button debouncing.

See also
pressed() notPressed()

Definition at line 1017 of file Arduboy2.cpp.

6.1.2.3 begin()

void Arduboy2::begin ()

Initialize the hardware, display the boot logo, provide boot utilities, etc. This function should be called once near the start of the sketch, usually in setup(), before using any other functions in this class. It initializes the display, displays the boot logo, provides "flashlight" and system control features and initializes audio control.

Note

If it becomes necessary to free up some code space for use by the sketch, boot() can be used instead of begin() to allow the elimination of some of the things that aren't absolutely required.

See the README file or main page, in section Substitute or remove boot up features, for more details.

See also
boot()

Definition at line 1170 of file Arduboy2.cpp.
6.1.2.4 beginDoFirst()

void Arduboy2Base::beginDoFirst ( ) [static], [inherited]
Helper function that calls the initial functions used by begin()
This function calls all the functions used by begin() up to the point of calling bootLogo(). It could be called by a sketch to make it easy to use one of the alternative bootLogo...() functions or a user provided one.
For example, if a sketch uses Sprites class functions but doesn't use drawBitmap(), some program space may be saved by using the following in place of begin():
arduboy.beginDoFirst();
arduboy.bootLogoSpritesSelfMasked(); // or:
//arduboy.bootLogoSpritesOverwrite(); // (whatever saves more memory)
arduboy.waitNoButtons();

See also
begin() boot()

Definition at line 48 of file Arduboy2.cpp.

6.1.2.5 blank()

void Arduboy2Core::blank ( ) [static], [inherited]
Blank the display screen by setting all pixels off.
All pixels on the screen will be written with a value of 0 to turn them off.
Definition at line 400 of file Arduboy2Core.cpp.

6.1.2.6 boot()

void Arduboy2Core::boot ( ) [static], [inherited]
Initialize the Arduboy's hardware.
This function initializes the display, buttons, etc.
This function is called by begin() so isn't normally called within a sketch. However, in order to free up some code space, by eliminating some of the start up features, it can be called in place of begin(). The functions that begin() would call after boot() can then be called to add back in some of the start up features as space permits.
See the README file or main page, in section Substitute or remove boot up features, for more details.

Warning
If this function is used, it is recommended that at least flashlight() or safeMode() be called after it to provide a means to upload a new sketch if the bootloader "magic number" problem is encountered.

See also
Arduboy2::begin() Arduboy2Base::flashlight() safeMode()

Definition at line 81 of file Arduboy2Core.cpp.

6.1.2.7 bootLogo()

void Arduboy2::bootLogo ( )
Display the boot logo sequence using drawBitmap().
This function is called by begin() and can be called by a sketch after boot(). The Arduboy logo scrolls down from the top of the screen to the center while the RGB LEDs light in sequence.
The bootLogoShell() helper function is used to perform the actual sequence. The documentation for bootLogoShell() provides details on how it operates.

See also
begin() boot() bootLogoShell() Arduboy2::bootLogoText()

Definition at line 1187 of file Arduboy2.cpp.
6.1.2.8 bootLogoCompressed()

```cpp
void Arduboy2::bootLogoCompressed()
```

Display the boot logo sequence using `drawCompressed()`. This function can be called by a sketch after `boot()` as an alternative to `bootLogo()`. This may reduce code size if the sketch itself uses `drawCompressed()`.

See also

- `bootLogo()`
- `begin()`
- `boot()`

Definition at line 1195 of file Arduboy2.cpp.

6.1.2.9 bootLogoExtra()

```cpp
void Arduboy2::bootLogoExtra()
```

Show the unit name at the bottom of the boot logo screen. This function is called by the `bootLogo...()` functions if the logo sequence runs to completion. If a unit name has been saved in system EEPROM, it will be displayed at the bottom of the screen. This function pauses for a short time to allow the name to be seen.

If the "Show Unit Name" flag in system EEPROM is cleared, this function will return without showing the unit name or pausing.

This function would not normally be called directly from within a sketch except from a sketch provided `bootlogo...()` function that renders the boot logo using a function that's not part of the Arduboy2 library. The README file or main page describes how this would be done, at the end of the Substitute or remove boot up features section.

See also

- `readUnitName()`
- `writeUnitName()`
- `bootLogo()`
- `bootLogoShell()`
- `bootLogoText()`
- `writeShowUnitNameFlag()`
- `begin()`

Definition at line 1282 of file Arduboy2.cpp.

6.1.2.10 bootLogoShell()

```cpp
bool Arduboy2Base::bootLogoShell(
    void(void(&)(int16_t)) drawLogo ) [static], [inherited]
```

Display the boot logo sequence using the provided function.

**Parameters**

- `drawLogo` A reference to a function which will draw the boot logo at the given Y position.

**Returns**

- `true` if the sequence runs to completion. `false` if the sequence is aborted or bypassed.

This common function executes the sequence to display the boot logo. It is called by `bootLogo()` and other similar functions which provide it with a reference to a function which will do the actual drawing of the logo.

This function calls `bootLogoExtra()` after the logo stops scrolling down, which derived classes can implement to add additional information to the logo screen. The Arduboy2 class uses this to display the unit name.

If the RIGHT button is pressed while the logo is scrolling down, the boot logo sequence will be aborted. This can be useful for developers who wish to quickly start testing, or anyone else who is impatient and wants to go straight to the actual sketch.

If the "Show LEDs with boot logo" flag in system EEPROM is cleared, the RGB LEDs will not be flashed during the logo display sequence.

If the "Show Boot Logo" flag in system EEPROM is cleared, this function will return without executing the logo display sequence.

The prototype for the function provided to draw the logo is:
void drawLogo(int16_t y);
The y parameter is the Y offset for the top of the logo. It is expected that the logo will be 16 pixels high and centered horizontally. This will result in the logo stopping in the middle of the screen at the end of the sequence. If the logo height is not 16 pixels, the Y value can be adjusted to compensate.

See also
   bootLogo() boot() Arduboy2::bootLogoExtra()

Definition at line 171 of file Arduboy2.cpp.

6.1.2.11 bootLogoSpritesBOverwrite()

void Arduboy2::bootLogoSpritesBOverwrite ( )
Display the boot logo sequence using SpritesB::drawOverwrite().
This function can be called by a sketch after boot() as an alternative to bootLogo(). This may reduce code size if the sketch itself uses SpritesB class functions.

See also
   bootLogo() begin() boot() SpritesB

Definition at line 1227 of file Arduboy2.cpp.

6.1.2.12 bootLogoSpritesBSelfMasked()

void Arduboy2::bootLogoSpritesBSelfMasked ( )
Display the boot logo sequence using SpritesB::drawSelfMasked().
This function can be called by a sketch after boot() as an alternative to bootLogo(). This may reduce code size if the sketch itself uses SpritesB class functions.

See also
   bootLogo() begin() boot() SpritesB

Definition at line 1219 of file Arduboy2.cpp.

6.1.2.13 bootLogoSpritesOverwrite()

void Arduboy2::bootLogoSpritesOverwrite ( )
Display the boot logo sequence using Sprites::drawOverwrite().
This function can be called by a sketch after boot() as an alternative to bootLogo(). This may reduce code size if the sketch itself uses Sprites class functions.

See also
   bootLogo() begin() boot() Sprites

Definition at line 1211 of file Arduboy2.cpp.

6.1.2.14 bootLogoSpritesSelfMasked()

void Arduboy2::bootLogoSpritesSelfMasked ( )
Display the boot logo sequence using Sprites::drawSelfMasked().
This function can be called by a sketch after boot() as an alternative to bootLogo(). This may reduce code size if the sketch itself uses Sprites class functions.

See also
   bootLogo() begin() boot() Sprites

Definition at line 1203 of file Arduboy2.cpp.
6.1.2.15 bootLogoText()

void Arduboy2::bootLogoText()
Display the boot logo sequence using printed text instead of a bitmap.
This function can be called by a sketch after boot() as an alternative to bootLogo().
The Arduboy logo scrolls down from the top of the screen to the center while the RGB LEDs light in sequence.
This function is the same as bootLogo() except the logo is printed as text instead of being rendered as a bitmap.
It can be used to save some code space in a case where the sketch is using the Print class functions to display text.
However, the logo will not look as good when printed as text as it does with the bitmap used by bootLogo().
If the RIGHT button is pressed while the logo is scrolling down, the boot logo sequence will be aborted. This can
be useful for developers who wish to quickly start testing, or anyone else who is impatient and wants to go straight
to the actual sketch.
If the "Show LEDs with boot logo" flag in system EEPROM is cleared, the RGB LEDs will not be flashed during the
logo display sequence.
If the "Show Boot Logo" flag in system EEPROM is cleared, this function will return without executing the logo
display sequence.

See also

bootLogo() boot() Arduboy2::bootLogoExtra()

Definition at line 1237 of file Arduboy2.cpp.

6.1.2.16 buttonsState()

uint8_t Arduboy2Core::buttonsState()
Get the current state of all buttons as a bitmask.

Returns

A bitmask of the state of all the buttons.

The returned mask contains a bit for each button. For any pressed button, its bit will be 1. For released buttons their
associated bits will be 0.
The following defined mask values should be used for the buttons:
LEFT_BUTTON, RIGHT_BUTTON, UP_BUTTON, DOWN_BUTTON, A_BUTTON, B_BUTTON

Definition at line 536 of file Arduboy2Core.cpp.

6.1.2.17 collide() [1/2]

bool Arduboy2Base::collide(Point point, Rect rect)
Test if a point falls within a rectangle.

Parameters

| point | A structure describing the location of the point. |
| rect  | A structure describing the location and size of the rectangle. |

Returns

true if the specified point is within the specified rectangle.

This function is intended to determine if an object, whose boundaries are are defined by the given rectangle, is in
contact with the given point.
6.1.2.18 collide() [2/2]

```cpp
bool Arduboy2Base::collide (Rect rect1, Rect rect2) [static], [inherited]
```

Test if a rectangle is intersecting with another rectangle.

**Parameters**

- **rect1, rect2**: Structures describing the size and locations of the rectangles.

**Returns**

- `true` if the first rectangle is intersecting the second.

This function is intended to determine if an object, whose boundaries are are defined by the given rectangle, is in contact with another rectangular object.

See also

- **Rect**

Definition at line 1049 of file Arduboy2.cpp.

6.1.2.19 cpuLoad()

```cpp
int Arduboy2Base::cpuLoad() [static], [inherited]
```

Return the load on the CPU as a percentage.

**Returns**

- The load on the CPU as a percentage of the total frame time.

The returned value gives the time spent processing a frame as a percentage the total time allotted for a frame, as determined by the frame rate. This function normally wouldn't be used in the final program. It is intended for use during program development as an aid in helping with frame timing.

**Note**

- The percentage returned can be higher than 100 if more time is spent processing a frame than the time allotted per frame. This would indicate that the frame rate should be made slower or the frame processing code should be optimized to run faster.

See also

- **nextFrameDEV() setFrameRate() setFrameDuration() nextFrame()**

Definition at line 278 of file Arduboy2.cpp.

6.1.2.20 delayShort()

```cpp
void Arduboy2Core::delayShort (uint16_t ms) [static], [inherited]
```

Delay for the number of milliseconds, specified as a 16 bit value.
This function works the same as the Arduino `delay()` function except the provided value is 16 bits long, so the maximum delay allowed is 65535 milliseconds (about 65.5 seconds). Using this function instead of Arduino `delay()` will save a few bytes of code.

Definition at line 582 of file Arduboy2Core.cpp.

### 6.1.2.21 digitalWriteRGB()

```cpp
void Arduboy2Core::digitalWriteRGB {
    uint8_t color,
    uint8_t val } [static], [inherited]
```

Set one of the RGB LEDs digitally, to either fully on or fully off.

#### Parameters

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Parameter</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>color</td>
<td>The name of the LED to set. The value given should be one of RED_LED, GREEN_LED or BLUE_LED.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>val</td>
<td>Indicates whether to turn the specified LED on or off. The value given should be RGB_ON or RGB_OFF.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

This 2 parameter version of the function will set a single LED within the RGB LED either fully on or fully off. See the description of the 3 parameter version of this function for more details on the RGB LED.

See also

- `digitalWriteRGB(uint8_t, uint8_t, uint8_t) setRGBled() freeRGBled()`

Definition at line 510 of file Arduboy2Core.cpp.

### 6.1.2.22 digitalWriteRGB()

```cpp
void Arduboy2Core::digitalWriteRGB {
    uint8_t red,
    uint8_t green,
    uint8_t blue } [static], [inherited]
```

Set the RGB LEDs digitally, to either fully on or fully off.

#### Parameters

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Parameter</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>red,green,blue</td>
<td>Use value RGB_ON or RGB_OFF to set each LED.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The RGB LED is actually individual red, green and blue LEDs placed very close together in a single package. This 3 parameter version of the function will set each LED either on or off, to set the RGB LED to 7 different colors at their highest brightness or turn it off.

The colors are as follows:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>RED_LED</th>
<th>GREEN_LED</th>
<th>BLUE_LED</th>
<th>COLOR</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>RGB_OFF</td>
<td>RGB_OFF</td>
<td>RGB_OFF</td>
<td>OFF</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>RGB_OFF</td>
<td>RGB_OFF</td>
<td>RGB_ON</td>
<td>Blue</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>RGB_OFF</td>
<td>RGB_ON</td>
<td>RGB_OFF</td>
<td>Green</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>RGB_OFF</td>
<td>RGB_ON</td>
<td>RGB_ON</td>
<td>Cyan</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>RGB_ON</td>
<td>RGB_OFF</td>
<td>RGB_OFF</td>
<td>Red</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>RGB_ON</td>
<td>RGB_OFF</td>
<td>RGB_ON</td>
<td>Magenta</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>RGB_ON</td>
<td>RGB_ON</td>
<td>RGB_OFF</td>
<td>Yellow</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>RGB_ON</td>
<td>RGB_ON</td>
<td>RGB_ON</td>
<td>White</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Note

Using the RGB LED in analog mode will prevent digital control of the LED. To restore the ability to control the LED digitally, use the `freeRGBled()` function.

Note

Many of the Kickstarter Arduboys were accidentally shipped with the RGB LED installed incorrectly. For these units, the green LED cannot be lit. As long as the green led is set off, turning on the red LED will actually light the blue LED and turning on the blue LED will actually light the red LED. If the green LED is turned on, none of the LEDs will light.

See also

- `digitalWriteRGB(uint8_t, uint8_t)`
- `setRGBled()`
- `freeRGBled()`

Definition at line 496 of file Arduboy2Core.cpp.

6.1.2.23 display() [1/2]

```cpp
void Arduboy2Base::display ( ) [static], [inherited]
```

Copy the contents of the display buffer to the display. The contents of the display buffer in RAM are copied to the display and will appear on the screen.

See also

- `display(bool)`

Definition at line 997 of file Arduboy2.cpp.

6.1.2.24 display() [2/2]

```cpp
void Arduboy2Base::display ( bool clear ) [static], [inherited]
```

Copy the contents of the display buffer to the display. The display buffer can optionally be cleared.

Parameters

- `clear` [true] If true the display buffer will be cleared to zero. The defined value CLEAR_BUFFER should be used instead of true to make it more meaningful.

Operation is the same as calling `display()` without parameters except additionally the display buffer will be cleared if the parameter evaluates to true. (The defined value CLEAR_BUFFER can be used for this)

Using `display(CLEAR_BUFFER)` is faster and produces less code than calling `display()` followed by `clear()`.

See also

- `display()`, `clear()`

Definition at line 1002 of file Arduboy2.cpp.

6.1.2.25 displayOff()

```cpp
void Arduboy2Core::displayOff ( ) [static], [inherited]
```

Turn the display off. The display will clear and be put into a low power mode. This can be used to extend battery life when a game is paused or when a sketch doesn’t require anything to be displayed for a relatively long period of time.
See also

   displayOn()

Definition at line 295 of file Arduboy2Core.cpp.

6.1.2.26  displayOn()

void Arduboy2Core::displayOn ( ) [static], [inherited]

Turn the display on.
Used to power up and reinitialize the display after calling displayOff().

Note

   The previous call to displayOff() will have caused the display's buffer contents to be lost. The display
   will have to be re-painted, which is usually done by calling display().

See also

   displayOff()

Definition at line 306 of file Arduboy2Core.cpp.

6.1.2.27  drawBitmap()

void Arduboy2Base::drawBitmap ( 
   int16_t x,
   int16_t y,
   const uint8_t * bitmap,
   uint8_t w,
   uint8_t h,
   uint8_t color = WHITE ) [static], [inherited]

Draw a bitmap from an array in program memory.

Parameters

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>x</th>
<th>The X coordinate of the top left pixel affected by the bitmap.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>y</td>
<td>The Y coordinate of the top left pixel affected by the bitmap.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bitmap</td>
<td>A pointer to the bitmap array in program memory.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>w</td>
<td>The width of the bitmap in pixels.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>h</td>
<td>The height of the bitmap in pixels. Must be a multiple of 8.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>color</td>
<td>The color of pixels for bits set to 1 in the bitmap. If the value is INVERT, bits set to 1 will invert the corresponding pixel. (optional; defaults to WHITE).</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Bits set to 1 in the provided bitmap array will have their corresponding pixel set to the specified color. For bits set to 0 in the array, the corresponding pixel will be left unchanged. Each byte in the array specifies a vertical column of 8 pixels, with the least significant bit at the top. The height of the image must be a multiple of 8 pixels (8, 16, 24, 32, ...). The width can be any size. The array must be located in program memory by using the PROGMEM modifier.
6.1 Arduboy2 Class Reference

See also
drawCompressed() drawSlowXYBitmap() Sprites

Definition at line 803 of file Arduboy2.cpp.

6.1.2.28 drawChar()

void Arduboy2::drawChar {
  int16_t x,
  int16_t y,
  uint8_t c,
  uint8_t color,
  uint8_t bg,
  uint8_t size } [static]

Draw a single character at the specified location in the screen buffer.

Parameters

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>x</th>
<th>The X coordinate, in pixels, for where to draw the character.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>y</td>
<td>The Y coordinate, in pixels, for where to draw the character.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>c</td>
<td>The value of the character to be drawn.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>color</td>
<td>the foreground color of the character.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bg</td>
<td>the background color of the character.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>size</td>
<td>The size of the character to draw.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The specified character is drawn starting at the provided coordinate. The point specified by the X and Y coordinates will be the top left corner of the character. The character will be rendered using the library's font5x7 font.

Note

This is a low level function used by the write() function to draw a character. Although it’s available as a public function, it wouldn't normally be used. In most cases the Arduino Print class should be used for writing text.

See also

Print write() font5x7

Definition at line 1334 of file Arduboy2.cpp.

6.1.2.29 drawCircle()

void Arduboy2Base::drawCircle {
  int16_t x0,
  int16_t y0,
  uint8_t r,
  uint8_t color = WHITE } [static], [inherited]

Draw a circle of a given radius.

Parameters

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>x0</th>
<th>The X coordinate of the circle's center.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>y0</td>
<td>The Y coordinate of the circle's center.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>r</td>
<td>The radius of the circle in pixels.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>color</td>
<td>The circle's color (optional; defaults to WHITE).</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
See also

fillCircle()

Definition at line 362 of file Arduboy2.cpp.

6.1.2.30 drawCompressed()

```cpp
void Arduboy2Base::drawCompressed (  
    int16_t sx,
    int16_t sy,
    const uint8_t * bitmap,
    uint8_t color = WHITE ) [static], [inherited]
```

Draw a bitmap from an array of compressed data.

Parameters

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Parameter</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>sx</td>
<td>The X coordinate of the top left pixel affected by the bitmap.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sy</td>
<td>The Y coordinate of the top left pixel affected by the bitmap.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bitmap</td>
<td>A pointer to the compressed bitmap array in program memory.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>color</td>
<td>The color of pixels for bits set to 1 in the bitmap. (optional; defaults to WHITE).</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Draw a bitmap starting at the given coordinates using an array that has been compressed using an RLE algorithm implemented by Team A.R.G.

The height of the image must be a multiple of 8 pixels (8, 16, 24, 32, ...). The width can be any size.

Bits set to 1 in the provided bitmap array (after decoding) will have their corresponding pixel set to the specified color. For bits set to 0 in the array, the corresponding pixel will be left unchanged.

The array must be located in program memory by using the PROGMEM modifier.

Note

C source code for a command line program named Cabi, which can convert a PNG bitmap image file to source code suitable for use with `drawCompressed()`, is included in the `extras` directory of the library.

See also
drawBitmap() drawSlowXYBitmap()

Definition at line 902 of file Arduboy2.cpp.

6.1.2.31 drawFastHLine()

```cpp
void Arduboy2Base::drawFastHLine (  
    int16_t x,
    int16_t y,
    uint8_t w,
    uint8_t color = WHITE ) [static], [inherited]
```

Draw a horizontal line.

Parameters

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Parameter</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>x</td>
<td>The X coordinate of the left start point.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>y</td>
<td>The Y coordinate of the left start point.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>w</td>
<td>The width of the line.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>color</td>
<td>The color of the line. (optional; defaults to WHITE).</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
6.1 Arduboy2 Class Reference

See also

`drawFastVLine()`, `drawLine()`

Definition at line 557 of file Arduboy2.cpp.

6.1.2.32 drawFastVLine()

```c
void Arduboy2Base::drawFastVLine (  
    int16_t x,  
    int16_t y,  
    uint8_t h,  
    uint8_t color = WHITE ) [static], [inherited]
```

Draw a vertical line.

Parameters

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>x</th>
<th>The X coordinate of the upper start point.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>y</td>
<td>The Y coordinate of the upper start point.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>h</td>
<td>The height of the line.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>color</td>
<td>The color of the line (optional; defaults to WHITE).</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

See also

`drawFastHLine()`, `drawLine()`

Definition at line 547 of file Arduboy2.cpp.

6.1.2.33 drawLine()

```c
void Arduboy2Base::drawLine (  
    int16_t x0,  
    int16_t y0,  
    int16_t x1,  
    int16_t y1,  
    uint8_t color = WHITE ) [static], [inherited]
```

Draw a line between two specified points.

Parameters

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>x0,x1</th>
<th>The X coordinates of the line ends.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>y0,y1</td>
<td>The Y coordinates of the line ends.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>color</td>
<td>The line's color (optional; defaults to WHITE).</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Draw a line from the start point to the end point using Bresenham's algorithm. The start and end points can be at any location with respect to the other.

See also

`drawFastHLine()`, `drawFastVLine()`

Definition at line 487 of file Arduboy2.cpp.

6.1.2.34 drawPixel()

```c
void Arduboy2Base::drawPixel (  
    int16_t x,
```
Set a single pixel in the display buffer to the specified color.

**Parameters**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>x</th>
<th>The X coordinate of the pixel.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>y</td>
<td>The Y coordinate of the pixel.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>color</td>
<td>The color of the pixel (optional; defaults to WHITE).</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The single pixel specified location in the display buffer is set to the specified color. The values WHITE or BLACK can be used for the color. If the `color` parameter isn’t included, the pixel will be set to WHITE.

**Definition at line 295 of file Arduboy2.cpp.**

### 6.1.2.35 `drawRect()`

```cpp
void Arduboy2Base::drawRect (  
    int16_t x,  
    int16_t y,  
    uint8_t w,  
    uint8_t h,  
    uint8_t color = WHITE  ) [static], [inherited]
```

Draw a rectangle of a specified width and height.

**Parameters**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>x</th>
<th>The X coordinate of the upper left corner.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>y</td>
<td>The Y coordinate of the upper left corner.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>w</td>
<td>The width of the rectangle.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>h</td>
<td>The height of the rectangle.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>color</td>
<td>The color of the pixel (optional; defaults to WHITE).</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

See also

`fillRect() drawRoundRect() fillRoundRect()`

**Definition at line 538 of file Arduboy2.cpp.**

### 6.1.2.36 `drawRoundRect()`

```cpp
void Arduboy2Base::drawRoundRect (  
    int16_t x,  
    int16_t y,  
    uint8_t w,  
    uint8_t h,  
    uint8_t r,  
    uint8_t color = WHITE  ) [static], [inherited]
```

Draw a rectangle with rounded corners.

**Parameters**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>x</th>
<th>The X coordinate of the left edge.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>y</td>
<td>The Y coordinate of the top edge.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>w</td>
<td>The width of the rectangle.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>h</td>
<td>The height of the rectangle.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Parameters

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Parameter</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>( r )</td>
<td>The radius of the semicircles forming the corners.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>( \text{color} )</td>
<td>The color of the rectangle (optional; defaults to WHITE).</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

See also

fillRoundRect() drawRect() fillRect()

Definition at line 666 of file Arduboy2.cpp.

6.1.2.37 drawSlowXYBitmap()

```cpp
void Arduboy2Base::drawSlowXYBitmap (  
    int16_t \( x \),  
    int16_t \( y \),  
    const uint8_t * \( \text{bitmap} \),  
    uint8_t \( w \),  
    uint8_t \( h \),  
    uint8_t \( \text{color} = \text{WHITE} \)) \{ \text{static}, \text{inherited} \}
```

Draw a bitmap from a horizontally oriented array in program memory.

Parameters

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Parameter</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>( x )</td>
<td>The X coordinate of the top left pixel affected by the bitmap.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>( y )</td>
<td>The Y coordinate of the top left pixel affected by the bitmap.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>( \text{bitmap} )</td>
<td>A pointer to the bitmap array in program memory.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>( w )</td>
<td>The width of the bitmap in pixels.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>( h )</td>
<td>The height of the bitmap in pixels.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>( \text{color} )</td>
<td>The color of pixels for bits set to 1 in the bitmap. (optional; defaults to WHITE).</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Bits set to 1 in the provided bitmap array will have their corresponding pixel set to the specified color. For bits set to 0 in the array, the corresponding pixel will be left unchanged.

Each byte in the array specifies a horizontal row of 8 pixels, with the most significant bit at the left end of the row.

The array must be located in program memory by using the PROGMEM modifier.

Note

This function requires a lot of additional CPU power and will draw images slower than drawBitmap(), which uses bitmaps that are stored in a format that allows them to be directly written to the screen. It is recommended you use drawBitmap() when possible.

See also

drawBitmap() drawCompressed()

Definition at line 849 of file Arduboy2.cpp.

6.1.2.38 drawTriangle()

```cpp
void Arduboy2Base::drawTriangle (  
    int16_t \( x0 \),  
    int16_t \( y0 \),  
    int16_t \( x1 \),  
    int16_t \( y1 \),  
    int16_t \( x2 \),  
```
int16_t y2,
uint8_t color = WHITE ) [static], [inherited]

Draw a triangle given the coordinates of each corner.

Parameters

| x0, x1, x2 | The X coordinates of the corners. |
| y0, y1, y2 | The Y coordinates of the corners. |
| color      | The triangle's color (optional; defaults to WHITE). |

A triangle is drawn by specifying each of the three corner locations. The corners can be at any position with respect to the others.

See also

fillTriangle()

Definition at line 692 of file Arduboy2.cpp.

6.1.2.39 everyXFrames()

bool Arduboy2Base::everyXFrames ( 
  uint8_t frames ) [static], [inherited]

Indicate if the specified number of frames has elapsed.

Parameters

frames The desired number of elapsed frames.

Returns

true if the specified number of frames has elapsed.

This function should be called with the same value each time for a given event. It will return true if the given number of frames has elapsed since the previous frame in which it returned true.

For example, if you wanted to fire a shot every 5 frames while the A button is being held down:

```c
if (arduboy.everyXFrames(5)) {
  if arduboy.pressed(A_BUTTON) {
    fireShot();
  }
}
```

See also

setFrameRate() setFrameDuration() nextFrame()

Definition at line 232 of file Arduboy2.cpp.

6.1.2.40 exitToBootloader()

void Arduboy2Core::exitToBootloader ( ) [static], [inherited]

Exit the sketch and start the bootloader.

The sketch will exit and the bootloader will be started in command mode. The effect will be similar to pressing the reset button.

This function is intended to be used to allow uploading a new sketch, when the USB code has been removed to gain more code space. Ideally, the sketch would present a "New Sketch Upload" menu or prompt telling the user to "Press and hold the DOWN button when the procedure to upload a new sketch has been initiated". The sketch would then wait for the DOWN button to be pressed and then call this function.
See also

ARDUBOY_NO_USB

Definition at line 587 of file Arduboy2Core.cpp.

6.1.2.41 fillCircle()

void Arduboy2Base::fillCircle (  
    int16_t x0,  
    int16_t y0,  
    uint8_t r,  
    uint8_t color = WHITE )  [static], [inherited]

Draw a filled-in circle of a given radius.

Parameters

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>x0</td>
<td>The X coordinate of the circle’s center.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>y0</td>
<td>The Y coordinate of the circle’s center.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>r</td>
<td>The radius of the circle in pixels.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>color</td>
<td>The circle’s color (optional; defaults to WHITE).</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

See also
drawCircle()

Definition at line 444 of file Arduboy2.cpp.

6.1.2.42 fillRect()

void Arduboy2Base::fillRect (  
    int16_t x,  
    int16_t y,  
    uint8_t w,  
    uint8_t h,  
    uint8_t color = WHITE )  [static], [inherited]

Draw a filled-in rectangle of a specified width and height.

Parameters

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>x</td>
<td>The X coordinate of the upper left corner.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>y</td>
<td>The Y coordinate of the upper left corner.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>w</td>
<td>The width of the rectangle.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>h</td>
<td>The height of the rectangle.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>color</td>
<td>The color of the pixel (optional; defaults to WHITE).</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

See also
drawRect() drawRoundRect() fillRoundRect()

Definition at line 608 of file Arduboy2.cpp.

6.1.2.43 fillRoundRect()

void Arduboy2Base::fillRoundRect (  
    int16_t x,  
    int16_t y,  
    uint8_t w,  
    uint8_t h,  
    uint8_t color = WHITE )  [static], [inherited]

Draw a filled-in rounded rectangle with rounded corners.

Parameters

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>x</td>
<td>The X coordinate of the upper left corner.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>y</td>
<td>The Y coordinate of the upper left corner.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>w</td>
<td>The width of the rectangle.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>h</td>
<td>The height of the rectangle.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>color</td>
<td>The color of the pixel (optional; defaults to WHITE).</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

See also
drawRect() drawRoundRect() fillRoundRect()

Definition at line 608 of file Arduboy2.cpp.
Draw a filled-in rectangle with rounded corners.

Parameters

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>x</td>
<td>The X coordinate of the left edge.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>y</td>
<td>The Y coordinate of the top edge.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>w</td>
<td>The width of the rectangle.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>h</td>
<td>The height of the rectangle.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>r</td>
<td>The radius of the semicircles forming the corners.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>color</td>
<td>The color of the rectangle (optional; defaults to WHITE).</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

See also

drawRoundRect() drawRect() fillRect()

Definition at line 681 of file Arduboy2.cpp.

6.1.2.44 fillScreen()

```cpp
void Arduboy2Base::fillScreen ( uint8_t color = WHITE ) [static], [inherited]
```

Fill the screen buffer with the specified color.

Parameters

| color | The fill color (optional; defaults to WHITE). |

See also

clear()

Definition at line 618 of file Arduboy2.cpp.

6.1.2.45 fillTriangle()

```cpp
void Arduboy2Base::fillTriangle ( int16_t x0, int16_t y0, int16_t x1, int16_t y1, int16_t x2, int16_t y2, uint8_t color = WHITE ) [static], [inherited]
```

Draw a filled-in triangle given the coordinates of each corner.

Parameters

| x0,x1,x2 | The X coordinates of the corners. |
| y0,y1,y2 | The Y coordinates of the corners. |
| color    | The triangle's color (optional; defaults to WHITE). |
A triangle is drawn by specifying each of the three corner locations. The corners can be at any position with respect to the others.

See also
drawTriangle()

Definition at line 700 of file Arduboy2.cpp.

6.1.2.46 flashlight()

```c
void Arduboy2Base::flashlight ( ) [static], [inherited]
```

Turn the RGB LED and display fully on to act as a small flashlight/torch. Checks if the UP button is pressed and if so turns the RGB LED and all display pixels fully on. If the UP button is detected, this function does not exit. The Arduboy must be restarted after flashlight mode is used. This function is called by begin() and should be called by a sketch after boot() unless safeMode() is called instead.

Note

This function also contains code to address a problem with uploading a new sketch, for sketches that interfere with the bootloader "magic number". This problem occurs with certain sketches that use large amounts of RAM. Being in flashlight mode when uploading a new sketch can fix this problem.

Therefore, for sketches that use boot() instead of begin(), a call to flashlight() should be included after calling boot(). If program space is limited, safeMode() can be used instead of flashlight().

See also

begin() boot() safeMode()

Definition at line 62 of file Arduboy2.cpp.

6.1.2.47 flipHorizontal()

```c
void Arduboy2Core::flipHorizontal ( ) [static], [inherited]
```

Flip the display horizontally or set it back to normal.

Parameters

- **flipped**: true will set horizontal flip mode. false will set normal horizontal orientation.

Calling this function with a value of true will cause the X coordinate to start at the left edge of the display instead of the right, effectively flipping the display horizontally.

Once in horizontal flip mode, it will remain this way until normal horizontal mode is set by calling this function with a value of false.

See also

flipVertical()

Definition at line 434 of file Arduboy2Core.cpp.

6.1.2.48 flipVertical()

```c
void Arduboy2Core::flipVertical ( ) [static], [inherited]
```

Flip the display vertically or set it back to normal.
Parameters

| flipped | true will set vertical flip mode. false will set normal vertical orientation. |

Calling this function with a value of true will cause the Y coordinate to start at the bottom edge of the display instead of the top, effectively flipping the display vertically. Once in vertical flip mode, it will remain this way until normal vertical mode is set by calling this function with a value of false.

See also

flipHorizontal()

Definition at line 428 of file Arduboy2Core.cpp.

6.1.2.49 freeRGBled()

void Arduboy2Core::freeRGBled ( ) [static], [inherited]
Relinquish analog control of the RGB LED.
Using the RGB LED in analog mode prevents further use of the LED in digital mode. This function will restore the pins used for the LED, so it can be used in digital mode.

See also
digitalWriteRGB() setRGBled()

Definition at line 487 of file Arduboy2Core.cpp.

6.1.2.50 generateRandomSeed()

unsigned long Arduboy2Core::generateRandomSeed ( ) [static], [inherited]
Create a seed suitable for use with a pseudorandom number generator.

Returns
A random value that can be used to seed a pseudorandom number generator.

The returned value will be a random value derived from entropy from an ADC reading of a floating pin combined with the microseconds since boot.

Note
This function will be more effective if called after a semi-random time, such as after waiting for the user to press a button to start a game, or another event that takes a variable amount of time after boot.

See also

Arduboy2Base::initRandomSeed()

Definition at line 564 of file Arduboy2Core.cpp.

6.1.2.51 getBuffer()

uint8_t * Arduboy2Base::getBuffer ( ) [static], [inherited]
Get a pointer to the display buffer in RAM.

Returns
A pointer to the display buffer array in RAM.

The location of the display buffer in RAM, which is displayed using display(), can be gotten using this function. The buffer can then be read and directly manipulated.
Note

The display buffer array, sBuffer, is public. A sketch can access it directly. Doing so may be more efficient than accessing it via the pointer returned by getBuffer().

See also

sBuffer

Definition at line 1007 of file Arduboy2.cpp.

6.1.2.52  getCharacterHeight()

static constexpr uint8_t Arduboy2::getCharacterHeight ( uint8_t textSize = 1 ) [inline], [static], [constexpr]

Get the height, in pixels, of a character in the library’s font.

Parameters

| textSize | The text size the character would be drawn at (optional; defaults to 1). |

Returns

The height, in pixels, that a character will occupy.

Returns the height, in pixels, that a character will occupy when drawn using the library text functions. The result will be based on the provided text size, or size 1 if not included.

See also

getcharacterWidth() getLineSpacing() getTextSize() setTextSize() font5x7

Definition at line 2129 of file Arduboy2.h.

6.1.2.53  getCharacterSpacing()

static constexpr uint8_t Arduboy2::getCharacterSpacing ( uint8_t textSize = 1 ) [inline], [static], [constexpr]

Get the number of pixels added after each character to provide spacing.

Parameters

| textSize | The text size the character would be drawn at (optional; defaults to 1). |

Returns

The number of pixels of space added after each character.

Returns the number of pixels added to the right of each character, to provide spacing, when drawn by the library text functions. The result will be based on the provided text size, or size 1 if not included.

See also

getcharacterWidth() getLineSpacing() getTextSize() setTextSize() font5x7

Definition at line 2108 of file Arduboy2.h.

6.1.2.54  getCharacterWidth()

static constexpr uint8_t Arduboy2::getCharacterWidth (
### getCharacterWidth()

```cpp
textSize = 1
```

Get the width, in pixels, of a character in the library's font.

**Parameters**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th><code>textSize</code></th>
<th>The text size the character would be drawn at (optional; defaults to 1).</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

**Returns**

The width, in pixels, that a character will occupy, not including inter-character spacing.

Returns the width, in pixels, occupied by a character in the font used by the library for text functions. The result will be based on the provided text size, or size 1 if not included. Since the font is monospaced, all characters will occupy the same width for a given text size.

The width does not include the spacing added after each character by the library text functions. The `getCharacterSpacing()` function can be used to obtain the character spacing value.

See also

- `getCharacterHeight()`
- `getCharacterSpacing()`
- `getTextSize()`
- `setTextSize()`
- `font5x7`

Definition at line 2086 of file Arduboy2.h.

### getCursorX()

```cpp
int16_t Arduboy2::getCursorX ()
```

Get the X coordinate of the current text cursor position.

**Returns**

The X coordinate of the current text cursor position.

The X coordinate returned is a pixel location with 0 indicating the leftmost column.

See also

- `getCursorY()`
- `setCursor()`
- `setCursorX()`
- `setCursorY()`

Definition at line 1433 of file Arduboy2.cpp.

### getCursorY()

```cpp
int16_t Arduboy2::getCursorY ()
```

Get the Y coordinate of the current text cursor position.

**Returns**

The Y coordinate of the current text cursor position.

The Y coordinate returned is a pixel location with 0 indicating the topmost row.

See also

- `getCursorX()`
- `setCursor()`
- `setCursorX()`
- `setCursorY()`

Definition at line 1438 of file Arduboy2.cpp.

### getLineSpacing()

```cpp
static constexpr uint8_t Arduboy2::getLineSpacing (/textSize = 1/)
```

Get the number of pixels added below each character to provide line spacing.
Parameters

| textSize | The text size the character would be drawn at (optional; defaults to 1). |

Returns

The number of pixels of space added below each character.

Returns the number of pixels added below each character, to provide spacing for wrapped lines, when drawn by the library text functions. The result will be based on the provided text size, or size 1 if not included.

Note

For this library, the value returned will be 0 because no spacing is added between lines. This function is included so that it can be used to write code that would be easily portable for use with a suite of equivalent functions that rendered text with added line spacing.

See also

getCharacterHeight() getCharacterSpacing() getTextSize() setTextSize() font5x7

Definition at line 2158 of file Arduboy2.h.

6.1.2.58 getPixel()

uint8_t Arduboy2Base::getPixel ( uint8_t x, uint8_t y ) [static], [inherited]

Returns the state of the given pixel in the screen buffer.

Parameters

| x | The X coordinate of the pixel. |
| y | The Y coordinate of the pixel. |

Returns

WHITE if the pixel is on or BLACK if the pixel is off.

Definition at line 355 of file Arduboy2.cpp.

6.1.2.59 getTextBackground()

uint8_t Arduboy2::getTextBackground ( ) [static]

Get the currently set text background color.

Returns

The background color that will be used to display any following text.

See also

setTextBackground() getTextColor()

Definition at line 1458 of file Arduboy2.cpp.
6.1.2.60  getTextColor()

uint8_t Arduboy2::getTextColor ( ) [static]
Get the currently set text foreground color.

Returns

The color that will be used to display any following text.

See also

setTextColor() getTextBackground()

definition at line 1448 of file Arduboy2.cpp.

6.1.2.61  getTextRawMode()

bool Arduboy2::getTextRawMode ( ) [static]
Get the current state of text raw mode.

Returns

true if text raw mode is enabled, false if disabled.

See also

setTextRawMode()

definition at line 1489 of file Arduboy2.cpp.

6.1.2.62  getTextSize()

uint8_t Arduboy2::getTextSize ( ) [static]
Get the currently set text size.

Returns

The size that will be used for any following text.

See also

setTextSize() getCharacterWidth() getCharacterHeight() getCharacterSpacing() getLineSpacing() font5x7

definition at line 1469 of file Arduboy2.cpp.

6.1.2.63  getTextWrap()

bool Arduboy2::getTextWrap ( ) [static]
Get the currently set text wrap mode.

Returns

true if text wrapping is on, false if wrapping is off.

See also

setTextWrap()

definition at line 1479 of file Arduboy2.cpp.
### 6.1.2.64 height()

```cpp
static constexpr uint8_t Arduboy2Core::height ( ) [inline], [static], [constexpr], [inherited]
Get the height of the display in pixels.
```

**Returns**

The height of the display in pixels.

Definition at line 471 of file Arduboy2Core.h.

### 6.1.2.65 idle()

```cpp
void Arduboy2Core::idle ( ) [static], [inherited]
Idle the CPU to save power.
This puts the CPU in idle sleep mode. You should call this as often as you can for the best power savings. The timer 0 overflow interrupt will wake up the chip every 1ms, so even at 60 FPS a well written app should be able to sleep maybe half the time in between rendering it's own frames.
Definition at line 278 of file Arduboy2Core.cpp.
```

### 6.1.2.66 initRandomSeed()

```cpp
void Arduboy2Base::initRandomSeed ( ) [static], [inherited]
Seed the random number generator with a random value.
The Arduino pseudorandom number generator is seeded with the random value returned from a call to generateRandomSeed().
```

**Note**

This function will be more effective if called after a semi-random time, such as after waiting for the user to press a button to start a game, or another event that takes a variable amount of time after boot.

**See also**

generateRandomSeed()

Definition at line 283 of file Arduboy2.cpp.

### 6.1.2.67 invert()

```cpp
void Arduboy2Core::invert ( bool inverse ) [static], [inherited]
Invert the entire display or set it back to normal.
```

**Parameters**

| inverse | true will invert the display. false will set the display to no-inverted. |

Calling this function with a value of true will set the display to inverted mode. A pixel with a value of 0 will be on and a pixel set to 1 will be off. Once in inverted mode, the display will remain this way until it is set back to non-inverted mode by calling this function with false.

Definition at line 415 of file Arduboy2Core.cpp.

### 6.1.2.68 justPressed()

```cpp
bool Arduboy2Base::justPressed ( 
```

Generated on Tue Sep 29 2020 14:29:54 for Arduboy2 Library by Doxygen
uint8_t button) [static], [inherited]

Check if a button has just been pressed.

Parameters

| button | The button to test for. Only one button should be specified. |

Returns

true if the specified button has just been pressed.

Return true if the given button was pressed between the latest call to pollButtons() and previous call to pollButtons(). If the button has been held down over multiple polls, this function will return false. There is no need to check for the release of the button since it must have been released for this function to return true when pressed again. This function should only be used to test a single button.

See also

pollButtons() justReleased()

Definition at line 1033 of file Arduboy2.cpp.

6.1.2.69 justReleased()

bool Arduboy2Base::justReleased (  
    uint8_t button ) [static], [inherited]

Check if a button has just been released.

Parameters

| button | The button to test for. Only one button should be specified. |

Returns

true if the specified button has just been released.

Return true if the given button, having previously been pressed, was released between the latest call to pollButtons() and previous call to pollButtons(). If the button has remained released over multiple polls, this function will return false. There is no need to check for the button having been pressed since it must have been previously pressed for this function to return true upon release. This function should only be used to test a single button.

Note

There aren't many cases where this function would be needed. Wanting to know if a button has been released, without knowing when it was pressed, is uncommon.

See also

pollButtons() justPressed()

Definition at line 1038 of file Arduboy2.cpp.

6.1.2.70 LCDCommandMode()

void Arduboy2Core::LCDCommandMode ( ) [static], [inherited]

Put the display into command mode.
When placed in command mode, data that is sent to the display will be treated as commands. See the SSD1306 controller and OLED display documents for available commands and command sequences.

Links:

Note
This is a low level function that is not intended for general use in a sketch. It has been made public and documented for use by derived classes.

See also
- LCDDataMode() sendLCDCommand() SPItransfer()

Definition at line 225 of file Arduboy2Core.cpp.

6.1.2.71 LCDDataMode()

void Arduboy2Core::LCDDataMode ( ) [static], [inherited]
Put the display into data mode.
When placed in data mode, data that is sent to the display will be considered as data to be displayed.

Note
This is a low level function that is not intended for general use in a sketch. It has been made public and documented for use by derived classes.

See also
- LCDCommandMode() SPItransfer()

Definition at line 220 of file Arduboy2Core.cpp.

6.1.2.72 nextFrame()

bool Arduboy2Base::nextFrame ( ) [static], [inherited]
Indicate that it’s time to render the next frame.

Returns
true if it’s time for the next frame.

When this function returns true, the amount of time has elapsed to display the next frame, as specified by setFrameRate() or setFrameDuration().
This function will normally be called at the start of the rendering loop which would wait for true to be returned before rendering and displaying the next frame.

example:
void loop() {
  if (!arduboy.nextFrame()) {
    return; // go back to the start of the loop
  }
  // render and display the next frame
}

See also
- setFrameRate() setFrameDuration() nextFrameDEV()

Definition at line 237 of file Arduboy2.cpp.
6.1.2.73 nextFrameDEV()

bool Arduboy2Base::nextFrameDEV() [static], [inherited]
Indicate that it's time to render the next frame, and visually indicate if the code is running slower than the desired frame rate. **FOR USE DURING DEVELOPMENT**

Returns

- `true` if it's time for the next frame.

This function is intended to be used in place of `nextFrame()` during the development of a sketch. It does the same thing as `nextFrame()` but additionally will light the yellow TX LED (at the bottom, to the left of the U-SB connector) whenever a frame takes longer to generate than the time allotted per frame, as determined by the `setFrameRate()` or `setFrameDuration()` function. Therefore, whenever the TX LED comes on (while not communicating over USB), it indicates that the sketch is running slower than the desired rate set by `setFrameRate()` or `setFrameDuration()`. In this case the developer may wish to set a slower frame rate, or reduce or optimize the code for such frames.

Note

Once a sketch is ready for release, it would be expected that `nextFrameDEV()` calls be restored to `nextFrame()`.

See also

- `nextFrame()`
- `cpuLoad()`
- `setFrameRate()`
- `setFrameDuration()`

Definition at line 265 of file Arduboy2.cpp.

6.1.2.74 notPressed()

bool Arduboy2Base::notPressed(  
  uint8_t buttons) [static], [inherited]

Test if the specified buttons are not pressed.

Parameters

- `buttons`: A bit mask indicating which buttons to test. (Can be a single button)

Returns

- `true` if all buttons in the provided mask are currently released.

Read the state of the buttons and return `true` if all the buttons in the specified mask are currently released.

Example: if (notPressed(UP_BUTTON))

Note

This function does not perform any button debouncing.

See also

- `pressed()`
- `anyPressed()`

Definition at line 1022 of file Arduboy2.cpp.

6.1.2.75 paint8Pixels()

void Arduboy2Core::paint8Pixels(  
  uint8_t pixels) [static], [inherited]

Paint 8 pixels vertically to the display.
Parameters

| pixels | A byte whose bits specify a vertical column of 8 pixels. |

A byte representing a vertical column of 8 pixels is written to the display at the current page and column address. The address is then incremented. The page/column address will wrap to the start of the display (the top left) when it increments past the end (lower right). The least significant bit represents the top pixel in the column. A bit set to 1 is lit, 0 is unlit.

Example:

\[
\begin{array}{cccccc}
\text{blank()} & \text{paint8Pixels()} & 0xFF, & 0, & 0xF0, & 0, \text{0x0F} \\
\text{v TOP LEFT corner (8x9)} & \text{v TOP LEFT corner} & \\
. . . . . . . . . . (page 1) & X . . . X . . . (page 1) & \\
. . . . . . . . . . & X . . . X . . . & \\
. . . . . . . . . . & X . . . X . . . & \\
. . . . . . . . . . & X . . . X . . . & \\
. . . . . . . . . . (end of page 1) & X . X . . . (end of page 1) & \\
. . . . . . . . . . (page 2) & . . . . . . . . (page 2) & \\
. . . . . . . . . . (end of page 2) & X . X . . . . . (end of page 2) & \\
\end{array}
\]

Definition at line 314 of file Arduboy2Core.cpp.

6.1.2.76 paintScreen() [1/2]

```cpp
void Arduboy2Core::paintScreen (const uint8_t *image) [static], [inherited]
```

Paints an entire image directly to the display from program memory.

Parameters

| image | A byte array in program memory representing the entire contents of the display. |

The contents of the specified array in program memory is written to the display. Each byte in the array represents a vertical column of 8 pixels with the least significant bit at the top. The bytes are written starting at the top left, progressing horizontally and wrapping at the end of each row, to the bottom right. The size of the array must exactly match the number of pixels in the entire display.

See also

paint8Pixels()

Definition at line 319 of file Arduboy2Core.cpp.

6.1.2.77 paintScreen() [2/2]

```cpp
void Arduboy2Core::paintScreen (uint8_t image[],
bool clear = false) [static], [inherited]
```

Paints an entire image directly to the display from an array in RAM.

Parameters

| image | A byte array in RAM representing the entire contents of the display. |
| clear | If true the array in RAM will be cleared to zeros upon return from this function. If false the RAM buffer will remain unchanged. (optional; defaults to false) |
The contents of the specified array in RAM is written to the display. Each byte in the array represents a vertical column of 8 pixels with the least significant bit at the top. The bytes are written starting at the top left, progressing horizontally and wrapping at the end of each row, to the bottom right. The size of the array must exactly match the number of pixels in the entire display.

If parameter `clear` is set to `true` the RAM array will be cleared to zeros after its contents are written to the display.

See also

`paint8Pixels()`

Definition at line 333 of file Arduboy2Core.cpp.

### 6.1.2.78 pollButtons()

```cpp
void Arduboy2Base::pollButtons ( ) [static], [inherited]
```

Poll the buttons and track their state over time. Read and save the current state of the buttons and also keep track of the button state when this function was previously called. These states are used by the `justPressed()` and `justReleased()` functions to determine if a button has changed state between now and the previous call to `pollButtons()`.

This function should be called once at the start of each new frame. The `justPressed()` and `justReleased()` functions rely on this function.

**Example:**
```cpp
void loop() {
  if (!arduboy.nextFrame()) {
    return;
  }
  arduboy.pollButtons();
  // use justPressed() as necessary to determine if a button was just pressed
}
```

**Note**

As long as the elapsed time between calls to this function is long enough, buttons will be naturally debounced. Calling it once per frame at a frame rate of 60 or lower (or possibly somewhat higher), should be sufficient.

See also

`justPressed()`, `justReleased()`, `currentButtonState`, `previousButtonState`

Definition at line 1027 of file Arduboy2.cpp.

### 6.1.2.79 pressed()

```cpp
bool Arduboy2Base::pressed ( uint8_t buttons ) [static], [inherited]
```

Test if the all of the specified buttons are pressed.

**Parameters**

- `buttons`: A bit mask indicating which buttons to test. (Can be a single button)

**Returns**

- `true` if all buttons in the provided mask are currently pressed.

Read the state of the buttons and return `true` if all of the buttons in the specified mask are being pressed.

**Example:**
```cpp
if (pressed(LEFT_BUTTON | A_BUTTON))
```

**Note**

This function does not perform any button debouncing.
6.1.2.80  readShowBootLogoFlag()

bool Arduboy2Base::readShowBootLogoFlag ( ) [static] [inherited]
Read the "Show Boot Logo" flag in system EEPROM.

Returns
true if the flag is set to indicate that the boot logo sequence should be displayed. false if the flag is set to
not display the boot logo sequence.

The "Show Boot Logo" flag is used to determine whether the system boot logo sequence is to be displayed when
the system boots up. This function returns the value of this flag.

See also
writeShowBootLogoFlag() bootLogo()

Definition at line 1105 of file Arduboy2.cpp.

6.1.2.81  readShowBootLogoLEDsFlag()

bool Arduboy2Base::readShowBootLogoLEDsFlag ( ) [static] [inherited]
Read the "Show LEDs with boot logo" flag in system EEPROM.

Returns
true if the flag is set to indicate that the RGB LEDs should be flashed. false if the flag is set to leave the
LEDs off.

The "Show LEDs with boot logo" flag is used to determine whether the RGB LEDs should be flashed in sequence
while the boot logo is being displayed. This function returns the value of this flag.

See also
writeShowBootLogoLEDsFlag()

Definition at line 1131 of file Arduboy2.cpp.

6.1.2.82  readShowUnitNameFlag()

bool Arduboy2Base::readShowUnitNameFlag ( ) [static] [inherited]
Read the "Show Unit Name" flag in system EEPROM.

Returns
true if the flag is set to indicate that the unit name should be displayed. false if the flag is set to not display
the unit name.

The "Show Unit Name" flag is used to determine whether the system unit name is to be displayed at the end of the
boot logo sequence. This function returns the value of this flag.

See also
writeShowUnitNameFlag() writeUnitName() readUnitName() Arduboy2::bootLogoExtra()

Definition at line 1118 of file Arduboy2.cpp.
6.1.2.83 readUnitID()

```
uint16_t Arduboy2Base::readUnitID () [static], [inherited]
```

Read the unit ID from system EEPROM.

**Returns**

The value of the unit ID stored in system EEPROM.

This function reads the unit ID that has been set in system EEPROM. The ID can be any value. It is intended to allow different units to be uniquely identified.

See also

- writeUnitID()
- readUnitName()

Definition at line 1057 of file Arduboy2.cpp.

6.1.2.84 readUnitName()

```
uint8_t Arduboy2Base::readUnitName (char * name ) [static], [inherited]
```

Read the unit name from system EEPROM.

**Parameters**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Parameter</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>name</td>
<td>A pointer to the first element of a char array in which the unit name will be written. The name will be up to ARDUBOY_UNIT_NAME_LEN characters in length and additionally terminated with a null (0x00) character, so the provided array MUST be at least ARDUBOY_UNIT_NAME_BUFFER_SIZE characters long. Using ARDUBOY_UNIT_NAME_BUFFER_SIZE to specify the array length is the proper way to do this, although any array larger than ARDUBOY_UNIT_NAME_BUFFER_SIZE is also acceptable.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Returns**

The length of the string (between 0 and ARDUBOY_UNIT_NAME_LEN inclusive).

This function reads the unit name that has been set in system EEPROM. The name represents characters in the library's font5x7 font. It can contain any values except 0xFF and the null (0x00) terminator value, plus the ASCII newline/line feed character (\n, 0x0A, inverse white circle) and ASCII carriage return character (\r, 0x0D, musical eighth note).

The name can be used for any purpose. It could identify the owner or give the unit itself a nickname. A sketch could use it to automatically fill in a name or initials in a high score table, or display it as the "player" when the opponent is the computer.

**Note**

The defined value ARDUBOY_UNIT_NAME_BUFFER_SIZE should be used to allocate an array to hold the unit name string, instead of using a hard coded value for the size. For example, to allocate a buffer and read the unit name into it:

```c
// Buffer large enough to hold the unit name and a null terminator
char unitName[ARDUBOY_UNIT_NAME_BUFFER_SIZE];
// After the call, unitNameLength will contain the actual name length,
// not including the null terminator.
uint8_t unitNameLength = arduboy.readUnitName(unitName);
```

See also

- writeUnitName()
- readUnitID()
- Arduboy2::bootLogoExtra()
- ARDUBOY_UNIT_NAME_BUFFER_SIZE
- ARDUBOY_UNIT_NAME_LEN
- Arduboy2::font5x7

Definition at line 1069 of file Arduboy2.cpp.
6.1.2.85 safeMode()

void Arduboy2Core::safeMode ( ) [static], [inherited]
Allow upload when the bootloader "magic number" could be corrupted.
If the UP button is held when this function is entered, the RGB LED will be lit and timer 0 will be disabled, then
the sketch will remain in a tight loop. This is to address a problem with uploading a new sketch, for sketches that
interfere with the bootloader "magic number". The problem occurs with certain sketches that use large amounts of
RAM.
This function should be called after boot () in sketches that don't call flashlight ().
It is intended to replace the flashlight () function when more program space is required. If possible, it is more
desirable to use flashlight (), so that the actual flashlight feature isn't lost.

See also
Arduboy2Base::flashlight() boot()

Definition at line 259 of file Arduboy2Core.cpp.

6.1.2.86 sendLCDCommand()

void Arduboy2Core::sendLCDCommand ( uint8_t command ) [static], [inherited]
Send a single command byte to the display.

Parameters
command The command byte to send to the display.

The display will be set to command mode then the specified command byte will be sent. The display will then be
set to data mode. Multi-byte commands can be sent by calling this function multiple times.

Note
Sending improper commands to the display can place it into invalid or unexpected states, possibly even
causing physical damage.

Definition at line 406 of file Arduboy2Core.cpp.

6.1.2.87 setCursor()

void Arduboy2::setCursor ( int16_t x, int16_t y ) [static]
Set the location of the text cursor.

Parameters
x The X (horizontal) coordinate, in pixels, for the new location of the text cursor.
y The Y (vertical) coordinate, in pixels, for the new location of the text cursor.

The location of the text cursor is set the the specified coordinates. The coordinates are in pixels. Since the coor-
dinates can specify any pixel location, the text does not have to be placed on specific rows. As with all drawing
functions, location 0, 0 is the top left corner of the display. The cursor location represents the top left corner of the
next character written.
See also
setCursorX() setCursorY() getCursorX() getCursorY()

Definition at line 1417 of file Arduboy2.cpp.
6.1.2.88  setCursorX()

```cpp
void Arduboy2::setCursorX ( int16_t x ) [static]
```

Set the X coordinate of the text cursor location.

Parameters

| x  | The X (horizontal) coordinate, in pixels, for the new location of the text cursor. |

The X coordinate for the location of the text cursor is set to the specified value, leaving the Y coordinate unchanged. For more details about the text cursor, see the `setCursor()` function.

See also

- `setCursor()`
- `setCursorY()`
- `getCursorX()`
- `getCursorY()`

Definition at line 1423 of file Arduboy2.cpp.

6.1.2.89  setCursorY()

```cpp
void Arduboy2::setCursorY ( int16_t y ) [static]
```

Set the Y coordinate of the text cursor location.

Parameters

| y  | The Y (vertical) coordinate, in pixels, for the new location of the text cursor. |

The Y coordinate for the location of the text cursor is set to the specified value, leaving the X coordinate unchanged. For more details about the text cursor, see the `setCursor()` function.

See also

- `setCursor()`
- `setCursorX()`
- `getCursorX()`
- `getCursorY()`

Definition at line 1428 of file Arduboy2.cpp.

6.1.2.90  setFrameDuration()

```cpp
void Arduboy2Base::setFrameDuration ( uint8_t duration ) [static], [inherited]
```

Set the frame rate, used by the frame control functions, by giving the duration of each frame.

Parameters

| duration | The desired duration of each frame in milliseconds. |

Set the frame rate by specifying the duration of each frame in milliseconds. This is used by `nextFrame()` to update frames at a given rate. If this function or `setFrameRate()` isn't used, the default will be 16ms per frame. Normally, the frame rate would be set to the desired value once, at the start of the game, but it can be changed at any time to alter the frame update rate.

See also

- `nextFrame()`
- ` setFrameRate()`

Definition at line 227 of file Arduboy2.cpp.
### 6.1.2.91 setFrameRate()

```cpp
void Arduboy2Base::setFrameRate (uint8_t rate) [static], [inherited]
```

Set the frame rate used by the frame control functions.

**Parameters**

- **rate**: The desired frame rate in frames per second.

Set the frame rate, in frames per second, used by `nextFrame()` to update frames at a given rate. If this function or `setFrameDuration()` isn't used, the default rate will be 60 (actually 62.5; see note below).

Normally, the frame rate would be set to the desired value once, at the start of the game, but it can be changed at any time to alter the frame update rate.

**Note**

The given rate is internally converted to a frame duration in milliseconds, rounded down to the nearest integer. Therefore, the actual rate will be equal to or higher than the rate given.

For example, 60 FPS would be 16.67ms per frame. This will be rounded down to 16ms, giving an actual frame rate of 62.5 FPS.

**See also**

`nextFrame()` `setFrameDuration()`

Definition at line 222 of file Arduboy2.cpp.

### 6.1.2.92 setRGBled() [1/2]

```cpp
void Arduboy2Core::setRGBled (uint8_t color, uint8_t val) [static], [inherited]
```

Set the brightness of one of the RGB LEDs without affecting the others.

**Parameters**

- **color**: The name of the LED to set. The value given should be one of RED_LED, GREEN_LED or BLUE_LED.
- **val**: The brightness value for the LED, from 0 to 255.

This 2 parameter version of the function will set the brightness of a single LED within the RGB LED without affecting the current brightness of the other two. See the description of the 3 parameter version of this function for more details on the RGB LED.

**See also**

`setRGBled(uint8_t, uint8_t, uint8_t)` `digitalWriteRGB()` `freeRGBled()`

Definition at line 463 of file Arduboy2Core.cpp.

### 6.1.2.93 setRGBled() [2/2]

```cpp
void Arduboy2Core::setRGBled (uint8_t red,
```

Generated on Tue Sep 29 2020 14:29:54 for Arduboy2 Library by Doxygen
uint8_t green, uint8_t blue ) [static], [inherited]

Set the light output of the RGB LED.

Parameters

red, green, blue
The brightness value for each LED.

The RGB LED is actually individual red, green and blue LEDs placed very close together in a single package. By setting the brightness of each LED, the RGB LED can show various colors and intensities. The brightness of each LED can be set to a value from 0 (fully off) to 255 (fully on).

Note

Certain libraries that take control of the hardware timers may interfere with the ability of this function to properly control the RGB LED. ArduboyPlaytune is one such library known to do this. The digitalWriteRGB() function will still work properly in this case.

Note

Many of the Kickstarter Arduboy units were accidentally shipped with the RGB LED installed incorrectly. For these units, the green LED cannot be lit. As long as the green LED is set to off, setting the red LED will actually control the blue LED and setting the blue LED will actually control the red LED. If the green LED is turned fully on, none of the LEDs will light.

See also

setRGBLed(uint8_t, uint8_t) digitalWriteRGB() freeRGBled()

Definition at line 441 of file Arduboy2Core.cpp.

6.1.2.94 setTextBackground()

void Arduboy2::setTextBackground ( uint8_t bg ) [static]

Set the text background color.

Parameters

bg
The background color to be used for following text. The values WHITE or BLACK should be used.

The background pixels of following characters will be set to the specified color. However, if the background color is set to be the same as the text color, the background will be transparent. Only the foreground pixels will be drawn. The background pixels will remain as they were before the character was drawn.

See also

setTextColor() getTextBackground()

Definition at line 1453 of file Arduboy2.cpp.

6.1.2.95 setColor()

void Arduboy2::setColor ( uint8_t color ) [static]

Set the text foreground color.
Parameters

| color | The color to be used for following text. The values WHITE or BLACK should be used. |

See also

setTextBackground() getTextColor()

Definition at line 1443 of file Arduboy2.cpp.

6.1.2.96 setTextRawMode()

void Arduboy2::setTextRawMode ( bool raw ) [static]

Set or disable text raw mode, allowing special characters to be displayed.

Parameters

| raw | true enables text raw mode. false disables it. |

In text raw mode, character values that would normally be treated specially will instead be displayed. The special characters are:

- ASCII newline/line feed (\n, 0x0A, inverse white circle).
- ASCII carriage return (\r, 0x0D, musical eighth note).

All other characters can be displayed regardless of whether raw mode is enabled or not.

See also

getTextRawMode() Print

Definition at line 1484 of file Arduboy2.cpp.

6.1.2.97 setTextSize()

void Arduboy2::setTextSize ( uint8_t s ) [static]

Set the text character size.

Parameters

| s | The text size multiplier. Must be 1 or higher. |

Setting a text size of 1 will result in standard size characters with one pixel for each bit in the bitmap for a character. The value specified is a multiplier. A value of 2 will double the width and height. A value of 3 will triple the dimensions, etc.

See also

ggetTextSize() getCharacterWidth() getCharacterHeight() getCharacterSpacing() getLineSpacing() font5x7

Definition at line 1463 of file Arduboy2.cpp.

6.1.2.98 setTextWrap()

void Arduboy2::setTextWrap ( bool w ) [static]
Set or disable text wrap mode.

Parameters

\[
  w \quad \text{true enables text wrap mode. false disables it.}
\]

Text wrap mode is enabled by specifying true. In wrap mode, if a character to be drawn would end up partially or fully past the right edge of the screen (based on the current text size), it will be placed at the start of the next line. The text cursor will be adjusted accordingly.

If wrap mode is disabled, characters will always be written at the current text cursor position. A character near the right edge of the screen may only be partially displayed and characters drawn at a position past the right edge of the screen will remain off screen.

See also

- getTextWrap()

Definition at line 1474 of file Arduboy2.cpp.

6.1.2.99 SPItransfer()

void Arduboy2Core::SPItransfer ( uint8_t data ) [static], [inherited]

Transfer a byte to the display.

Parameters

\[
  \text{data} \quad \text{The byte to be sent to the display.}
\]

Transfer one byte to the display over the SPI port and wait for the transfer to complete. The byte will either be interpreted as a command or as data to be placed on the screen, depending on the command/data mode.

See also

- LCDDataMode() LCDCommandMode() sendLCDCommand() SPItransferAndRead()

Definition at line 239 of file Arduboy2Core.cpp.

6.1.2.100 SPItransferAndRead()

uint8_t Arduboy2Core::SPItransferAndRead ( uint8_t data ) [static], [inherited]

Transfer a byte to, and read a byte from, the SPI bus.

Parameters

\[
  \text{data} \quad \text{The byte to be sent.}
\]

Returns

The byte that was received.

This function does the same as the SPItransfer() function but also reads and returns the byte of data that was received during the transfer.

This function is of no use for a standard Arduboy, since only the display is connected to the SPI bus and data cannot be received from the display. It has been provided for use with homemade or expanded units that have had additional peripherals added to the SPI bus that are capable of sending data.
See also

SPItransfer()

Definition at line 253 of file Arduboy2Core.cpp.

6.1.2.101 systemButtons()

```
void Arduboy2Base::systemButtons ( ) [static], [inherited]
Handle buttons held on startup for system control.
This function is called by begin() and can be called by a sketch after boot().
Hold the B button when booting to enter system control mode. The B button must be held continuously to remain in
this mode. Then, pressing other buttons will perform system control functions:

• UP: Set "sound enabled" in EEPROM
• DOWN: Set "sound disabled" (mute) in EEPROM
```

See also

begin() boot()

Definition at line 83 of file Arduboy2.cpp.

6.1.2.102 waitNoButtons()

```
void Arduboy2Base::waitNoButtons ( ) [static], [inherited]
Wait until all buttons have been released.
This function is called by begin() and can be called by a sketch after boot().
It won't return unless no buttons are being pressed. A short delay is performed each time before testing the state of
the buttons to do a simple button debounce.
This function is called at the end of begin() to make sure no buttons used to perform system start up actions are
still being pressed, to prevent them from erroneously being detected by the sketch code itself.
```

See also

begin() boot()

Definition at line 213 of file Arduboy2.cpp.

6.1.2.103 width()

```
static constexpr uint8_t Arduboy2Core::width ( ) [inline], [static], [constexpr], [inherited]
Get the width of the display in pixels.

Returns

The width of the display in pixels.
```

Definition at line 464 of file Arduboy2Core.h.

6.1.2.104 write()

```
size_t Arduboy2::write ( 
  uint8_t c ) [virtual]
Write a single character at the current text cursor position.

Parameters

  c    The value of the character to be written.
```
Returns

The number of characters written (will always be 1).

This is the Arduboy implementaiton of the Arduino virtual `write()` function. The single character specified is written to the the screen buffer at the current text cursor position or possibly the start of the next line if text wrap mode is on. The text cursor is then set to the next character position. Characters are rendered using the library's `font5x7` font. Two character values are handled specially:

- ASCII newline/line feed (\n, 0x0A, inverse white circle). This will move the text cursor position to the start of the next line, based on the current text size.
- ASCII carriage return (\r, 0x0D, musical eighth note). This character will be ignored.

To override the special handling of the above values, to allow the characters they represent to be printed, text raw mode can be selected using the `setTextRawMode()` function.

Note

This function is rather low level and, although it's available as a public function, it wouldn't normally be used. In most cases the Arduino `Print` class should be used for writing text.

See also

`Print` `setTextSize()` `setTextColor()` `setTextBackgroundColor()` `setWrap()` `setTextRawMode()` `drawChar()` `font5x7`

Definition at line 1311 of file Arduboy2.cpp.

6.1.2.105 `writeShowBootLogoFlag()`

```cpp
void Arduboy2Base::writeShowBootLogoFlag ( bool val ) [static], [inherited]
```

Write the "Show Boot Logo" flag in system EEPROM.

Parameters

- `val` If `true` the flag is set to indicate that the boot logo sequence should be displayed. If `false` the flag is set to not display the boot logo sequence.

The "Show Boot Logo" flag is used to determine whether the system boot logo sequence is to be displayed when the system boots up. This function allows the flag to be saved with the desired value.

See also

`readShowBootLogoFlag()` `bootLogo()`

Definition at line 1110 of file Arduboy2.cpp.

6.1.2.106 `writeShowBootLogoLEDsFlag()`

```cpp
void Arduboy2Base::writeShowBootLogoLEDsFlag ( bool val ) [static], [inherited]
```

Write the "Show LEDs with boot logo" flag in system EEPROM.

Parameters

- `val` If `true` the flag is set to indicate that the RGB LEDs should be flashed. If `false` the flag is set to leave the LEDs off.

The "Show LEDs with boot logo" flag is used to determine whether the RGB LEDs should be flashed in sequence
while the boot logo is being displayed. This function allows the flag to be saved with the desired value.

See also

readShowBootLogoLEDsFlag()

Definition at line 1136 of file Arduboy2.cpp.

### 6.1.2.107 writeShowUnitNameFlag()

```cpp
void Arduboy2Base::writeShowUnitNameFlag ( bool val ) [static], [inherited]
```

Write the "Show Unit Name" flag in system EEPROM.

**Parameters**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>val</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>If true the flag is set to indicate that the unit name should be displayed. If false the flag is set to not display the unit name.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The "Show Unit Name" flag is used to determine whether the system unit name is to be displayed at the end of the boot logo sequence. This function allows the flag to be saved with the desired value.

See also

readShowUnitNameFlag() writeUnitName() readUnitName() Arduboy2::bootLogoExtra()

Definition at line 1123 of file Arduboy2.cpp.

### 6.1.2.108 writeUnitID()

```cpp
void Arduboy2Base::writeUnitID ( uint16_t id ) [static], [inherited]
```

Write a unit ID to system EEPROM.

**Parameters**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>id</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>The value of the unit ID to be stored in system EEPROM.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

This function writes a unit ID to a reserved location in system EEPROM. The ID can be any value. It is intended to allow different units to be uniquely identified.

See also

readUnitID() writeUnitName()

Definition at line 1063 of file Arduboy2.cpp.

### 6.1.2.109 writeUnitName()

```cpp
void Arduboy2Base::writeUnitName ( const char ∗ name ) [static], [inherited]
```

Write a unit name to system EEPROM.

**Parameters**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>name</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>A pointer to the first element of a C-style null-terminated string containing the unit name to be saved. The name can be up to ARDUBOY_UNIT_NAME_LEN characters long and must be terminated with a null (0x00) character.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Generated on Tue Sep 29 2020 14:29:54 for Arduboy2 Library by Doxygen
This function writes a unit name to a reserved area in system EEPROM. The name represents characters in the library's font5x7 font. It can contain any values except 0xFF and the null (0x00) terminator value, plus the ASCII newline/line feed character (\n, 0x0A, inverse white circle) and ASCII carriage return character (\r, 0x0D, musical eighth note) because of their special use by the library's text handling functions.

The name can be used for any purpose. It could identify the owner or give the unit itself a nickname. A sketch could use it to automatically fill in a name or initials in a high score table, or display it as the "player" when the opponent is the computer.

Note

The defined value ARDUBOY_UNIT_NAME_BUFFER_SIZE should be used to allocate an array to hold the unit name string, instead of using a hard coded value for the size.

See also

readUnitName() writeUnitID() Arduboy2::bootLogoExtra() ARDUBOY_UNIT_NAME_BUFFER_SIZE ARDUBOY_UNIT_NAME_LEN Arduboy2::font5x7

Definition at line 1089 of file Arduboy2.cpp.

6.1.3 Member Data Documentation

6.1.3.1 arduboy_logo

const PROGMEM uint8_t Arduboy2Base::arduboy_logo [static], [inherited]

Initial value:

\[
\begin{align*}
0xF0, \ 0xF8, \ 0x9C, \ 0x8E, \ 0x87, \ 0x83, \ 0x87, \ 0x8E, \ 0x9C, \ 0xF8, \\
0xF0, \ 0x00, \ 0x00, \ 0xFE, \ 0xFF, \ 0x03, \ 0x03, \ 0x03, \ 0x03, \ 0x03, \\
0x07, \ 0x0E, \ 0xFC, \ 0xF8, \ 0x00, \ 0x00, \ 0xFE, \ 0xFF, \ 0x03, \ 0x03, \\
0x07, \ 0x0E, \ 0xFC, \ 0xF8, \ 0x00, \ 0x00, \ 0xFE, \ 0xFF, \ 0x03, \ 0x03, \\
0x07, \ 0x0E, \ 0xFC, \ 0xF8, \ 0x00, \ 0x00, \ 0xFE, \ 0xFF, \ 0x03, \ 0x03, \\
0x07, \ 0x0E, \ 0xFC, \ 0xF8, \ 0x00, \ 0x00, \ 0xFE, \ 0xFF, \ 0x03, \ 0x03, \\
0x07, \ 0x0E, \ 0xFC, \ 0xF8, \ 0x00, \ 0x00, \ 0xFE, \ 0xFF, \ 0x03, \ 0x03, \\
0x07, \ 0x0E, \ 0xFC, \ 0xF8, \ 0x00, \ 0x00, \ 0xFE, \ 0xFF, \ 0x03, \ 0x03, \\
0x07, \ 0x0E, \ 0xFC, \ 0xF8, \ 0x00, \ 0x00, \ 0xFE, \ 0xFF, \ 0x03, \ 0x03, \\
0x07, \ 0x0E, \ 0xFC, \ 0xF8, \ 0x00, \ 0x00, \ 0xFE, \ 0xFF, \ 0x03, \ 0x03, \\
0x07, \ 0x0E, \ 0xFC, \ 0xF8, \ 0x00, \ 0x00, \ 0xFE, \ 0xFF, \ 0x03, \ 0x03, \\
0x07, \ 0x0E, \ 0xFC, \ 0xF8, \ 0x00, \ 0x00, \ 0xFE, \ 0xFF, \ 0x03, \ 0x03,
\end{align*}
\]

The bitmap for the ARDUBOY logo in drawBitmap() format.

See also

bootLogo() drawBitmap()

Definition at line 1472 of file Arduboy2.h.

6.1.3.2 arduboy_logo_compressed

const PROGMEM uint8_t Arduboy2Base::arduboy_logo_compressed [static], [inherited]

Initial value:

\[
\begin{align*}
0x57, \ 0x5F, \ 0x9C, \ 0x53, \ 0x72, \ 0x75, \ 0x29, \ 0xE5, \ 0x5C, \ 0x52,
0x49, \ 0x49, \ 0x87, \ 0x08, \ 0x91, \ 0x05, \\
0x76, \ 0x8B, \ 0x0D, \ 0x2A, \ 0x8B, \ 0x4C, \ 0x55, \ 0x92, \ 0x90, \ 0x0D,
0xE, \ 0x87, \ 0x0D, \ 0x82, \ 0x82, \ 0x2A, \ 0x5A, \ 0x25, \ 0xF9, \ 0x8F,
0x9F, \ 0x47, \ 0x4B, \ 0x28, \ 0x85, \ 0x54, \ 0x52, \ 0x49, \ 0x25,
0x9D, \ 0x3A, \ 0x95, \ 0x5A, \ 0x3A, \ 0x45, \ 0x2A, \ 0x87, \ 0x29, \ 0xA7,
0x84, \ 0x76, \ 0xBB, \ 0x55, \ 0x56, \ 0x59, \ 0xAB, \ 0x24, \ 0x9F, \ 0x5D,
0x5B, \ 0x65, \ 0x7D, \ 0x59, \ 0x5C, \ 0x92, \ 0x29, \ 0x3B, \ 0xA1, \ 0x4E,
0x77, \ 0x03, \ 0x85, \ 0x74, \ 0x9A, \ 0x8F, \ 0x8F, \ 0xEF, \ 0xED, \ 0x76,
\end{align*}
\]

Generated on Tue Sep 29 2020 14:29:54 for Arduboy2 Library by Doxygen
6.1 Arduboy2 Class Reference

The bitmap for the ARDUBOY logo in drawCompressed() format.

See also:

- bootLogoCompressed()
- drawCompressed()

Definition at line 1479 of file Arduboy2.h.

6.1.3.3 arduboy_logo_sprite

const PROGMEM uint8_t Arduboy2Base::arduboy_logo_sprite [static], [inherited]

Initial value:

```c
88, 16,
0xF0, 0xF8, 0x9C, 0x8E, 0x87, 0x83, 0x87, 0x8E, 0x9C, 0xF8,
0xF0, 0x00, 0x00, 0xFE, 0xFF, 0x03, 0x03, 0x03, 0x03, 0x03,
0x03, 0x03, 0x03, 0x07, 0x0E, 0x0F, 0xF8, 0x00, 0x00, 0x00,
0xFF, 0xFF, 0x00, 0x00, 0xFF, 0xFF, 0x00, 0x00, 0xFF, 0xFF,
0x00, 0x00, 0x00, 0x00, 0x00, 0x00, 0x00, 0x00, 0x00, 0xFF,
0x00, 0xFF, 0x0F, 0x0F, 0x0F, 0x0F, 0x0F, 0x0F, 0x0F, 0x0F,
0x00, 0x00, 0x00, 0x00, 0x00, 0x00, 0x00, 0x00, 0x00, 0x00,
0x01, 0x01, 0x01, 0x01, 0x01, 0x01, 0x01, 0x01, 0x01, 0x01,
0x00, 0xFF, 0xFF, 0xFF, 0xFF, 0xFF, 0xFF, 0xFF, 0xFF, 0xFF,
0x00, 0xFF, 0x0F, 0x0F, 0x0F, 0x0F, 0x0F, 0x0F, 0x0F, 0x0F,
0x00, 0x00, 0x00, 0x00, 0x00, 0x00, 0x00, 0x00, 0x00, 0x00,
0xF8, 0xF8, 0xF8, 0xF8, 0xF8, 0xF8, 0xF8, 0xF8, 0xF8, 0xF8,
}  
```

The bitmap for the ARDUBOY logo in Sprites class drawSelfMasked() or drawOverwrite() format.

See also:

- bootLogoSpritesSelfMasked()
- bootLogoSpritesOverwrite()
- bootLogoSpritesBSelfMasked()
- bootLogoSpritesBOverwrite()

Definition at line 1488 of file Arduboy2.h.

6.1.3.4 audio

Arduboy2Audio Arduboy2Base::audio [static], [inherited]

An object created to provide audio control functions within this class.

This object is created to eliminate the need for a sketch to create an Arduboy2Audio class object itself.

See also:

- Arduboy2Audio

Definition at line 227 of file Arduboy2.h.

6.1.3.5 currentButtonState

uint8_t Arduboy2Base::currentButtonState = 0 [static], [inherited]

Used by pollButtons() to hold the current button state.

Holds the last button state read by the pollButtons() function.

A sketch normally does not need to read or manipulate this variable and just lets pollButtons() handle it. Access to it is provided for special circumstances. See previousButtonState for further discussion.
6.1.3.6 font5x7

const PROGMEM uint8_t Arduboy2::font5x7 [static]
The font used for text functions.
This is a 5 pixel by 7 pixel font. Each character is actually coded as 8 pixels high to allow a 1 pixel descender below the baseline. Many symbols also use the 8th pixel. The library functions add a 1 pixel space after each character to separate them, so characters written at size 1 will occupy a 6 x 8 pixel area when drawn.
The character set represented is code page 437, also known as OEM 437, OEM-US, PC-8 or DOS Latin US. This is an 8 bit set which includes all printable ASCII characters plus many accented characters, symbols and line drawing characters.
The data for this font is from file glcdfont.c in the Adafruit GFX graphics library.

Note
With the library's text functions, the line drawing characters in the font won't touch on the left and right sides, as originally intended, because of the extra blank pixel added to the right of each character.

Note
The library's text functions, except drawChar(), handle two character values specially:

• ASCII newline/line feed (\n, 0x0A, inverse white circle). This will move the text cursor position to the start of the next line, based on the current text size.
• ASCII carriage return (\r, 0x0D, musical eighth note). This character will be ignored.

To override the special handling of the above values, to allow the characters they represent to be printed, text raw mode can be selected using the setTextRawMode() function.

See also
Print write() drawChar() setTextRawMode() getCharacterWidth() getCharacterHeight() getCharacterSpacing() getLineSpacing() readUnitName() writeUnitName()

Definition at line 2208 of file Arduboy2.h.

6.1.3.7 frameCount

uint16_t Arduboy2Base::frameCount = 0 [static], [inherited]
A counter which is incremented once per frame.
This counter is incremented once per frame when using the nextFrame() function. It will wrap to zero when it reaches its maximum value.
It could be used to have an event occur for a given number of frames, or a given number of frames later, in a way that wouldn't be quantized the way that using everyXFrames() might.

example:
// move for 10 frames when right button is pressed, if not already moving
if (!moving) {
    if (arduboy.justPressed(RIGHT_BUTTON)) {
        endMoving = arduboy.frameCount + 10;
        moving = true;
    }
} else {
    movePlayer();
    if (arduboy.frameCount == endMoving) {
        moving = false;
    }
}

This counter could also be used to determine the number of frames that have elapsed between events but the possibility of the counter wrapping would have to be accounted for.
6.1 Arduboy2 Class Reference

See also

nextFrame() everyXFrames()

Definition at line 1381 of file Arduboy2.h.

6.1.3.8 previousButtonState

uint8_t Arduboy2Base::previousButtonState = 0 [static], [inherited]
Used by pollButtons() to hold the previous button state.
Holds the button state saved by the pollButtons() function from the previous to last call to it.
A sketch normally does not need to read or manipulate this variable and just lets pollButtons() handle it.
Access to it is provided for special circumstances.
For example, the time between calls to pollButtons() must be long enough to allow sufficient time to "de-bounce" the buttons. pollButtons() is normally called once every frame but at a high frame rate the time between frames may be too short for this. Calling pollButtons() every 2nd frame could provide a long enough time but then a call to justPressed() in each frame would make it look like a button was pressed twice. To remedy this, after justPressed() detects a press, previousButtonState could be modified to acknowledge the button press.

```cpp
void setup() {
  arduboy.begin();
  arduboy.setFrameRate(120); // too fast for button debounce
}
void loop() {
  if (!arduboy.nextFrame()) {
    return;
  }
  if (arduboy.everyXFrames(2)) { // only poll every 2nd frame
    arduboy.pollButtons(); // to slow down poll frequency
  }
  if (justPressedOnce(A_BUTTON)) {
    // handle button press as normal...
  }
  // remainder of loop() code...
  bool justPressedOnce(uint8_t button) {
    bool pressed = arduboy.justPressed(button);
    if (pressed) {
      arduboy.previousButtonState |= button; // set state as pressed
    }
    return pressed;
  }
}
```

See also

currentButtonState pollButtons() justPressed() justReleased()

Definition at line 1451 of file Arduboy2.h.

6.1.3.9 sBuffer

uint8_t Arduboy2Base::sBuffer [static], [inherited]
The display buffer array in RAM.
The display buffer (also known as the screen buffer) contains an image bitmap of the desired contents of the display, which is written to the display using the display() function. The drawing functions of this library manipulate the contents of the display buffer. A sketch can also access the display buffer directly.

See also

getBuffer()

Definition at line 1465 of file Arduboy2.h.
The documentation for this class was generated from the following files:

- Arduboy2.h
- Arduboy2.cpp
- Arduboy2Data.cpp
6.2 Arduboy2Audio Class Reference

Provide speaker and sound control.
#include <Arduboy2Audio.h>

Static Public Member Functions

- static void begin ()
  Initialize the speaker based on the current mute setting.
- static void on ()
  Turn sound on.
- static void off ()
  Turn sound off (mute).
- static void toggle ()
  Toggle the sound on/off state.
- static void saveOnOff ()
  Save the current sound state in EEPROM.
- static bool enabled ()
  Get the current sound state.

6.2.1 Detailed Description

Provide speaker and sound control.
This class provides functions to initialize the speaker and control the enabling and disabling (muting) of sound. It doesn't provide any functions to actually produce sound.
The state of sound muting is stored in system EEPROM and so is retained over power cycles.
An Arduboy2Audio class object named audio will be created by the Arduboy2Base class, so there is no need for a sketch itself to create an Arduboy2Audio object. Arduboy2Audio functions can be called using the Arduboy2 or Arduboy2Base audio object.

Example:
#include <Arduboy2.h>
Arduboy2 arduboy;
// Arduboy2Audio functions can be called as follows:
arduboy.audio.on();
arduboy.audio.off();

Note
In order for this class to be fully functional, the external library or functions used by a sketch to actually to produce sounds should be compliant with this class. This means they should only produce sound if it is enabled, or mute the sound if it's disabled. The enabled() function can be used to determine if sound is enabled or muted. Generally a compliant library would accept the enabled() function as an initialization parameter and then call it as necessary to determine the current state.

For example, the ArduboyTones and ArduboyPlaytune libraries require an enabled() type function to be passed as a parameter in the constructor, like so:
#include <Arduboy2.h>
#include <ArduboyTones.h>
Arduboy2 arduboy;
ArduboyTones sound(arduboy.audio.enabled);

Note
A friend class named Arduboy2Ex is declared by this class. The intention is to allow a sketch to create an Arduboy2Ex class which would have access to the private and protected members of the Arduboy2Audio class. It is hoped that this may eliminate the need to create an entire local copy of the library, in order to extend the functionality, in most circumstances.

Definition at line 73 of file Arduboy2Audio.h.

6.2.2 Member Function Documentation
6.2.2.1  begin()

```cpp
void Arduboy2Audio::begin ( ) [static]
```

Initialize the speaker based on the current mute setting.
The speaker is initialized based on the current mute setting saved in system EEPROM.
Definition at line 48 of file Arduboy2Audio.cpp.

6.2.2.2  enabled()

```cpp
bool Arduboy2Audio::enabled ( ) [static]
```

Get the current sound state.

Returns

- `true` if sound is currently enabled (not muted).

This function should be used by code that actually generates sound. If `true` is returned, sound can be produced. If `false` is returned, sound should be muted.

See also

- `on()`
- `off()`
- `toggle()`

Definition at line 56 of file Arduboy2Audio.cpp.

6.2.2.3  off()

```cpp
void Arduboy2Audio::off ( ) [static]
```

Turn sound off (mute).
The system is configured to not produce sound (mute). This function sets the sound mode only until the unit is powered off. To save the current mode use `saveOnOff()`.

See also

- `on()`
- `toggle()`
- `saveOnOff()`

Definition at line 23 of file Arduboy2Audio.cpp.

6.2.2.4  on()

```cpp
void Arduboy2Audio::on ( ) [static]
```

Turn sound on.
The system is configured to generate sound. This function sets the sound mode only until the unit is powered off. To save the current mode use `saveOnOff()`.

See also

- `off()`
- `toggle()`
- `saveOnOff()`

Definition at line 11 of file Arduboy2Audio.cpp.

6.2.2.5  saveOnOff()

```cpp
void Arduboy2Audio::saveOnOff ( ) [static]
```

Save the current sound state in EEPROM.
The current sound state, set by `on()` or `off()`, is saved to the reserved system area in EEPROM. This allows the state to carry over between power cycles and after uploading a different sketch.
Note

EEPROM is limited in the number of times it can be written to. Sketches should not continuously change and then save the state rapidly.

See also

on() off() toggle()

Definition at line 43 of file Arduboy2Audio.cpp.

6.2.2.6 toggle()

void Arduboy2Audio::toggle () [static]
Toggle the sound on/off state.
If the system is configured for sound on, it will be changed to sound off (mute). If sound is off, it will be changed to on. This function sets the sound mode only until the unit is powered off. To save the current mode use saveOnOff().

See also

on() off() saveOnOff()

Definition at line 35 of file Arduboy2Audio.cpp.

The documentation for this class was generated from the following files:

- Arduboy2Audio.h
- Arduboy2Audio.cpp

6.3 Arduboy2Base Class Reference

The main functions provided for writing sketches for the Arduboy, minus text output.
#include <Arduboy2.h>

Inheritance diagram for Arduboy2Base:
Collaboration diagram for Arduboy2Base:

```
Arduboy2Base
    \-- Arduboy2Core
    \-- Arduboy2Audio
```

### Static Public Member Functions

- `static void begin ()`
  
  Initialize the hardware, display the boot logo, provide boot utilities, etc.

- `static void beginDoFirst ()`
  
  Helper function that calls the initial functions used by `begin()`

- `static void flashlight ()`
  
  Turn the RGB LED on and display fully on to act as a small flashlight/torch.

- `static void systemButtons ()`
  
  Handle buttons held on startup for system control.

- `static void bootLogo ()`
  
  Display the boot logo sequence using `drawBitmap()`.

- `static void bootLogoCompressed ()`
  
  Display the boot logo sequence using `drawCompressed()`.

- `static void bootLogoSpritesSelfMasked ()`
  
  Display the boot logo sequence using `Sprites::drawSelfMasked()`.

- `static void bootLogoSpritesOverwrite ()`
  
  Display the boot logo sequence using `Sprites::drawOverwrite()`.

- `static void bootLogoSpritesBSelfMasked ()`
  
  Display the boot logo sequence using `SpritesB::drawSelfMasked()`.

- `static void bootLogoSpritesBOverwrite ()`
  
  Display the boot logo sequence using `SpritesB::drawOverwrite()`.

- `static bool bootLogoShell (void(&drawLogo)(int16_t))`
  
  Display the boot logo sequence using the provided function.

- `static void waitNoButtons ()`
  
  Wait until all buttons have been released.

- `static void clear ()`
  
  Clear the display buffer.

- `static void fillScreen (uint8_t color=WHITE)`
  
  Fill the screen buffer with the specified color.

- `static void display ()`
  
  Copy the contents of the display buffer to the display.

- `static void display (bool clear)`
  
  Copy the contents of the display buffer to the display. The display buffer can optionally be cleared.

- `static void drawPixel (int16_t x, int16_t y, uint8_t color=WHITE)`
Set a single pixel in the display buffer to the specified color.

- static uint8_t getPixel (uint8_t x, uint8_t y)
  Returns the state of the given pixel in the screen buffer.

- static void drawCircle (int16_t x0, int16_t y0, uint8_t r, uint8_t color=WHITE)
  Draws a circle of a given radius.

- static void fillCircle (int16_t x0, int16_t y0, uint8_t r, uint8_t color=WHITE)
  Draw a filled-in circle of a given radius.

- static void drawLine (int16_t x0, int16_t y0, int16_t x1, int16_t y1, uint8_t color=WHITE)
  Draw a line between two specified points.

- static void drawFastVLine (int16_t x, int16_t y, uint8_t h, uint8_t color=WHITE)
  Draw a vertical line.

- static void drawFastHLine (int16_t x, int16_t y, uint8_t w, uint8_t color=WHITE)
  Draw a horizontal line.

- static void drawRect (int16_t x, int16_t y, uint8_t w, uint8_t h, uint8_t color=WHITE)
  Draw a rectangle of a specified width and height.

- static void fillRect (int16_t x, int16_t y, uint8_t w, uint8_t h, uint8_t color=WHITE)
  Draw a filled-in rectangle of a specified width and height.

- static void drawRoundRect (int16_t x, int16_t y, uint8_t w, uint8_t h, uint8_t r, uint8_t color=WHITE)
  Draw a rectangle with rounded corners.

- static void fillRoundRect (int16_t x, int16_t y, uint8_t w, uint8_t h, uint8_t r, uint8_t color=WHITE)
  Draw a filled-in rectangle with rounded corners.

- static void drawTriangle (int16_t x0, int16_t y0, int16_t x1, int16_t y1, int16_t x2, int16_t y2, uint8_t color=WHITE)
  Draw a triangle given the coordinates of each corner.

- static void fillTriangle (int16_t x0, int16_t y0, int16_t x1, int16_t y1, int16_t x2, int16_t y2, uint8_t color=WHITE)
  Draw a filled-in triangle given the coordinates of each corner.

- static void drawBitmap (int16_t x, int16_t y, const uint8_t *bitmap, uint8_t w, uint8_t h, uint8_t color=WHITE)
  Draw a bitmap from an array in program memory.

- static void drawSlowXYBitmap (int16_t x, int16_t y, const uint8_t *bitmap, uint8_t w, uint8_t h, uint8_t color=WHITE)
  Draw a bitmap from a horizontally oriented array in program memory.

- static void drawCompressed (int16_t sx, int16_t sy, const uint8_t *bitmap, uint8_t color=WHITE)
  Draw a bitmap from an array of compressed data.

- static uint8_t *getBuffer ()
  Get a pointer to the display buffer in RAM.

- static void initRandomSeed ()
  Seed the random number generator with a random value.

- static void setFrameRate (uint8_t rate)
  Set the frame rate used by the frame control functions.

- static void setFrameDuration (uint8_t duration)
  Set the frame rate, used by the frame control functions, by giving the duration of each frame.

- static bool nextFrame ()
  Indicate that it's time to render the next frame.

- static bool nextFrameDEV ()
  Indicate that it's time to render the next frame, and visually indicate if the code is running slower than the desired frame rate. FOR USE DURING DEVELOPMENT

- static bool everyXFrames (uint8_t frames)
  Indicate if the specified number of frames has elapsed.

- static int cpuLoad ()
  Return the load on the CPU as a percentage.

- static bool pressed (uint8_t buttons)
Test if the all of the specified buttons are pressed.
• static bool anyPressed (uint8_t buttons)
  Test if any of the specified buttons are pressed.
• static bool notPressed (uint8_t buttons)
  Test if the specified buttons are not pressed.
• static void pollButtons ()
  Poll the buttons and track their state over time.
• static bool justPressed (uint8_t button)
  Check if a button has just been pressed.
• static bool justReleased (uint8_t button)
  Check if a button has just been released.
• static bool collide (Point point, Rect rect)
  Test if a point falls within a rectangle.
• static bool collide (Rect rect1, Rect rect2)
  Test if a rectangle is intersecting with another rectangle.
• static uint16_t readUnitID ()
  Read the unit ID from system EEPROM.
• static void writeUnitID (uint16_t id)
  Write a unit ID to system EEPROM.
• static uint8_t readUnitName (char ∗name)
  Read the unit name from system EEPROM.
• static void writeUnitName (const char ∗name)
  Write a unit name to system EEPROM.
• static bool readShowBootLogoFlag ()
  Read the "Show Boot Logo" flag in system EEPROM.
• static void writeShowBootLogoFlag (bool val)
  Write the "Show Boot Logo" flag in system EEPROM.
• static bool readShowUnitNameFlag ()
  Read the "Show Unit Name" flag in system EEPROM.
• static void writeShowUnitNameFlag (bool val)
  Write the "Show Unit Name" flag in system EEPROM.
• static bool readShowBootLogoLEDsFlag ()
  Read the "Show LEDs with boot logo" flag in system EEPROM.
• static void writeShowBootLogoLEDsFlag (bool val)
  Write the "Show LEDs with boot logo" flag in system EEPROM.
• static void idle ()
  Idle the CPU to save power.
• static void LCDDataMode ()
  Put the display into data mode.
• static void LCDCommandMode ()
  Put the display into command mode.
• static void SPItransfer (uint8_t data)
  Transfer a byte to the display.
• static uint8_t SPItransferAndRead (uint8_t data)
  Transfer a byte to, and read a byte from, the SPI bus.
• static void displayOff ()
  Turn the display off.
• static void displayOn ()
  Turn the display on.
• static constexpr uint8_t width ()
  Get the width of the display in pixels.
• static constexpr uint8_t height ()
  Get the height of the display in pixels.
• static uint8_t buttonsState ()
  Get the current state of all buttons as a bitmask.
• static void paint8Pixels (uint8_t pixels)
  Paint 8 pixels vertically to the display.
• static void paintScreen (const uint8_t *image)
  Paints an entire image directly to the display from program memory.
• static void paintScreen (uint8_t image[], bool clear=false)
  Paints an entire image directly to the display from an array in RAM.
• static void blank ()
  Blank the display screen by setting all pixels off.
• static void invert (bool inverse)
  Invert the entire display or set it back to normal.
• static void allPixelsOn (bool on)
  Turn all display pixels on or display the buffer contents.
• static void flipVertical (bool flipped)
  Flip the display vertically or set it back to normal.
• static void flipHorizontal (bool flipped)
  Flip the display horizontally or set it back to normal.
• static void sendLCDCommand (uint8_t command)
  Send a single command byte to the display.
• static void setRGBled (uint8_t red, uint8_t green, uint8_t blue)
  Set the light output of the RGB LED.
• static void setRGBled (uint8_t color, uint8_t val)
  Set the brightness of one of the RGB LEDs without affecting the others.
• static void freeRGBled ()
  Relinquish analog control of the RGB LED.
• static void digitalWriteRGB (uint8_t red, uint8_t green, uint8_t blue)
  Set the RGB LEDs digitally, to either fully on or fully off.
• static void digitalWriteRGB (uint8_t color, uint8_t val)
  Set one of the RGB LEDs digitally, to either fully on or fully off.
• static void boot ()
  Initialize the Arduboy's hardware.
• static void safeMode ()
  Allow upload when the bootloader "magic number" could be corrupted.
• static unsigned long generateRandomSeed ()
  Create a seed suitable for use with a pseudorandom number generator.
• static void delayShort (uint16_t ms) __attribute__((noinline))
  Delay for the number of milliseconds, specified as a 16 bit value.
• static void exitToBootloader ()
  Exit the sketch and start the bootloader.

Static Public Attributes

• static Arduboy2Audio audio
  An object created to provide audio control functions within this class.
• static uint16_t frameCount = 0
  A counter which is incremented once per frame.
• static uint8_t currentButtonState = 0
  Used by pollButtons() to hold the current button state.
6.3 Arduboy2Base Class Reference

- static uint8_t previousButtonState = 0
  
  Used by pollButtons() to hold the previous button state.
- static uint8_t eBuffer [(HEIGHT * WIDTH)/8]
  
  The display buffer array in RAM.
- static const PROGMEM uint8_t arduboy_logo []
  
  The bitmap for the ARDUBOY logo in drawBitmap() format.
- static const PROGMEM uint8_t arduboy_logo_compressed []
  
  The bitmap for the ARDUBOY logo in drawCompressed() format.
- static const PROGMEM uint8_t arduboy_logo_sprite []
  
  The bitmap for the ARDUBOY logo in Sprites class drawSelfMasked() or drawOverwrite() format.

6.3.1 Detailed Description

The main functions provided for writing sketches for the Arduboy, minus text output. This class is inherited by Arduboy2, so if text output functions are required Arduboy2 should be used instead.

Note

An Arduboy2Audio class object named audio will be created by the Arduboy2Base class, so there is no need for a sketch itself to create an Arduboy2Audio object. Arduboy2Audio functions can be called using the Arduboy2 or Arduboy2Base audio object.

Example:

```cpp
#include <Arduboy2.h>
Arduboy2 arduboy;
// Arduboy2Audio functions can be called as follows:
arduboy.audio.on();
arduboy.audio.off();
```

Note

A friend class named Arduboy2Ex is declared by this class. The intention is to allow a sketch to create an Arduboy2Ex class which would have access to the private and protected members of the Arduboy2Base class. It is hoped that this may eliminate the need to create an entire local copy of the library, in order to extend the functionality, in most circumstances.

See also

Arduboy2

Definition at line 211 of file Arduboy2.h.

6.3.2 Member Function Documentation

6.3.2.1 allPixelsOn()

```cpp
void Arduboy2Core::allPixelsOn ( bool on ) [static], [inherited]
```

Turn all display pixels on or display the buffer contents.

Parameters

- `on` true turns all pixels on. false displays the contents of the hardware display buffer.

Calling this function with a value of true will override the contents of the hardware display buffer and turn all pixels on. The contents of the hardware buffer will remain unchanged.
Calling this function with a value of false will set the normal state of displaying the contents of the hardware display buffer.
Note

All pixels will be lit even if the display is in inverted mode.

See also

invert()

Definition at line 422 of file Arduboy2Core.cpp.

6.3.2.2 anyPressed()

bool Arduboy2Base::anyPressed ( uint8_t buttons ) [static]

Test if any of the specified buttons are pressed.

Parameters

| buttons | A bit mask indicating which buttons to test. (Can be a single button) |

Returns

true if one or more of the buttons in the provided mask are currently pressed.

Read the state of the buttons and return true if one or more of the buttons in the specified mask are being pressed.

Example: if (anyPressed(RIGHT_BUTTON | LEFT_BUTTON))

Note

This function does not perform any button debouncing.

See also

pressed() notPressed()

Definition at line 1017 of file Arduboy2.cpp.

6.3.2.3 begin()

void Arduboy2Base::begin ( ) [static]

Initialize the hardware, display the boot logo, provide boot utilities, etc.

This function should be called once near the start of the sketch, usually in setup(), before using any other functions in this class. It initializes the display, displays the boot logo, provides "flashlight" and system control features and initializes audio control.

Note

If it becomes necessary to free up some code space for use by the sketch, boot() can be used instead of begin() to allow the elimination of some of the things that aren't absolutely required.

See the README file or main page, in section Substitute or remove boot up features, for more details.

See also

boot()

Definition at line 31 of file Arduboy2.cpp.
6.3.2.4 beginDoFirst()

void Arduboy2Base::beginDoFirst ( ) [static]
Helper function that calls the initial functions used by begin()
This function calls all the functions used by begin() up to the point of calling bootLogo(). It could be called by a sketch to make it easy to use one of the alternative bootLogo...() functions or a user provided one.
For example, if a sketch uses Sprites class functions but doesn't use drawBitmap(), some program space may be saved by using the following in place of begin():

```cpp
arduboy.beginDoFirst();
arduboy.bootLogoSpritesSelfMasked(); // or:
//arduboy.bootLogoSpritesOverwrite(); // (whatever saves more memory)
arduboy.waitNoButtons();
```

See also

begin() boot()

Definition at line 48 of file Arduboy2.cpp.

6.3.2.5 blank()

void Arduboy2Core::blank ( ) [static], [inherited]
Blank the display screen by setting all pixels off.
All pixels on the screen will be written with a value of 0 to turn them off.
Definition at line 400 of file Arduboy2Core.cpp.

6.3.2.6 boot()

void Arduboy2Core::boot ( ) [static], [inherited]
Initialize the Arduboy's hardware.
This function initializes the display, buttons, etc.
This function is called by begin() so isn't normally called within a sketch. However, in order to free up some code space, by eliminating some of the start up features, it can be called in place of begin(). The functions that begin() would call after boot() can then be called to add back in some of the start up features as space permits.
See the README file or main page, in section Substitute or remove boot up features, for more details.

Warning

If this function is used, it is recommended that at least flashlight() or safeMode() be called after it to provide a means to upload a new sketch if the bootloader "magic number" problem is encountered.

See also

Arduboy2::begin() Arduboy2Base::flashlight() safeMode()

Definition at line 81 of file Arduboy2Core.cpp.

6.3.2.7 bootLogo()

void Arduboy2Base::bootLogo ( ) [static]
Display the boot logo sequence using drawBitmap().
This function is called by begin() and can be called by a sketch after boot().
The Arduboy logo scrolls down from the top of the screen to the center while the RGB LEDs light in sequence.
The bootLogoShell() helper function is used to perform the actual sequence. The documentation for bootLogoShell() provides details on how it operates.

See also

begin() boot() bootLogoShell() Arduboy2::bootLogoText()

Definition at line 109 of file Arduboy2.cpp.
### 6.3.2.8 bootLogoCompressed()

```cpp
void Arduboy2Base::bootLogoCompressed () [static]
```

Display the boot logo sequence using `drawCompressed()`. This function can be called by a sketch after `boot()` as an alternative to `bootLogo()`. This may reduce code size if the sketch itself uses `drawCompressed()`.

See also

- `bootLogo() begin() boot()`

Definition at line 119 of file Arduboy2.cpp.

### 6.3.2.9 bootLogoShell()

```cpp
bool Arduboy2Base::bootLogoShell ( void(&)(int16_t) drawLogo ) [static]
```

Display the boot logo sequence using the provided function.

**Parameters**

- `drawLogo` A reference to a function which will draw the boot logo at the given Y position.

**Returns**

- `true` if the sequence runs to completion.
- `false` if the sequence is aborted or bypassed.

This common function executes the sequence to display the boot logo. It is called by `bootLogo()` and other similar functions which provide it with a reference to a function which will do the actual drawing of the logo. This function calls `bootLogoExtra()` after the logo stops scrolling down, which derived classes can implement to add additional information to the logo screen. The `Arduboy2` class uses this to display the unit name. If the RIGHT button is pressed while the logo is scrolling down, the boot logo sequence will be aborted. This can be useful for developers who wish to quickly start testing, or anyone else who is impatient and wants to go straight to the actual sketch.

If the "Show LEDs with boot logo" flag in system EEPROM is cleared, the RGB LEDs will not be flashed during the logo display sequence.

If the "Show Boot Logo" flag in system EEPROM is cleared, this function will return without executing the logo display sequence.

The prototype for the function provided to draw the logo is:

```cpp
void drawLogo(int16_t y);
```

The `y` parameter is the Y offset for the top of the logo. It is expected that the logo will be 16 pixels high and centered horizontally. This will result in the logo stopping in the middle of the screen at the end of the sequence. If the logo height is not 16 pixels, the Y value can be adjusted to compensate.

See also

- `bootLogo() boot() Arduboy2::bootLogoExtra()`

Definition at line 171 of file Arduboy2.cpp.

### 6.3.2.10 bootLogoSpritesBOverwrite()

```cpp
void Arduboy2Base::bootLogoSpritesBOverwrite () [static]
```

Display the boot logo sequence using `SpritesB::drawOverwrite()`. This function can be called by a sketch after `boot()` as an alternative to `bootLogo()`. This may reduce code size if the sketch itself uses `SpritesB` class functions.

See also

- `bootLogo() begin() boot() SpritesB`

Definition at line 159 of file Arduboy2.cpp.
6.3.2.11 bootLogoSpritesBSelfMasked()

void Arduboy2Base::bootLogoSpritesBSelfMasked(); [static]
Display the boot logo sequence using SpritesB::drawSelfMasked().
This function can be called by a sketch after boot() as an alternative to bootLogo(). This may reduce code
size if the sketch itself uses SpritesB class functions.

See also

bootLogo() begin() boot() Sprites

Definition at line 149 of file Arduboy2.cpp.

6.3.2.12 bootLogoSpritesOverwrite()

void Arduboy2Base::bootLogoSpritesOverwrite(); [static]
Display the boot logo sequence using Sprites::drawOverwrite().
This function can be called by a sketch after boot() as an alternative to bootLogo(). This may reduce code
size if the sketch itself uses Sprites class functions.

See also

bootLogo() begin() boot() Sprites

Definition at line 139 of file Arduboy2.cpp.

6.3.2.13 bootLogoSpritesSelfMasked()

void Arduboy2Base::bootLogoSpritesSelfMasked(); [static]
Display the boot logo sequence using Sprites::drawSelfMasked().
This function can be called by a sketch after boot() as an alternative to bootLogo(). This may reduce code
size if the sketch itself uses Sprites class functions.

See also

bootLogo() begin() boot() Sprites

Definition at line 129 of file Arduboy2.cpp.

6.3.2.14 buttonsState()

uint8_t Arduboy2Core::buttonsState(); [static], [inherited]
Get the current state of all buttons as a bitmask.

Returns

A bitmask of the state of all the buttons.

The returned mask contains a bit for each button. For any pressed button, its bit will be 1. For released buttons their
associated bits will be 0.
The following defined mask values should be used for the buttons:
LEFT_BUTTON, RIGHT_BUTTON, UP_BUTTON, DOWN_BUTTON, A_BUTTON, B_BUTTON

Definition at line 536 of file Arduboy2Core.cpp.

6.3.2.15 clear()

void Arduboy2Base::clear(); [static]
Clear the display buffer.
The entire contents of the screen buffer are cleared to BLACK.
See also

display(bool) fillScreen()

Definition at line 290 of file Arduboy2.cpp.

6.3.2.16 collide() [1/2]

bool Arduboy2Base::collide ( 
    Point point, 
    Rect rect ) [static]

Test if a point falls within a rectangle.

Parameters

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>point</th>
<th>A structure describing the location of the point.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>rect</td>
<td>A structure describing the location and size of the rectangle.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Returns

ture if the specified point is within the specified rectangle.

This function is intended to determine if an object, whose boundaries are are defined by the given rectangle, is in contact with the given point.

See also

Point Rect

Definition at line 1043 of file Arduboy2.cpp.

6.3.2.17 collide() [2/2]

bool Arduboy2Base::collide ( 
    Rect rect1, 
    Rect rect2 ) [static]

Test if a rectangle is intersecting with another rectangle.

Parameters

| rect1,rect2 | Structures describing the size and locations of the rectangles. |

Returns

ture if the first rectangle is intersecting the second.

This function is intended to determine if an object, whose boundaries are are defined by the given rectangle, is in contact with another rectangular object.

See also

Rect

Definition at line 1049 of file Arduboy2.cpp.

6.3.2.18 cpuLoad()  

int Arduboy2Base::cpuLoad ( ) [static]

Return the load on the CPU as a percentage.
Returns

The load on the CPU as a percentage of the total frame time.

The returned value gives the time spent processing a frame as a percentage the total time allotted for a frame, as determined by the frame rate. This function normally wouldn’t be used in the final program. It is intended for use during program development as an aid in helping with frame timing.

Note

The percentage returned can be higher than 100 if more time is spent processing a frame than the time allotted per frame. This would indicate that the frame rate should be made slower or the frame processing code should be optimized to run faster.

See also

nextFrameDEV() setFrameRate() setFrameDuration() nextFrame()

Definition at line 278 of file Arduboy2.cpp.

6.3.2.19 delayShort()

void Arduboy2Core::delayShort ( uint16_t ms ) [static], [inherits]

Delay for the number of milliseconds, specified as a 16 bit value.

Parameters

| ms | The delay in milliseconds. |

This function works the same as the Arduino delay() function except the provided value is 16 bits long, so the maximum delay allowed is 65535 milliseconds (about 65.5 seconds). Using this function instead of Arduino delay() will save a few bytes of code.

Definition at line 582 of file Arduboy2Core.cpp.

6.3.2.20 digitalWriteRGB() [1/2]

void Arduboy2Core::digitalWriteRGB ( uint8_t color, uint8_t val ) [static], [inherits]

Set one of the RGB LEDs digitally, to either fully on or fully off.

Parameters

| color | The name of the LED to set. The value given should be one of RED_LED, GREEN_LED or BLUE_LED. |
| val | Indicates whether to turn the specified LED on or off. The value given should be RGB_ON or RGB_OFF. |

This 2 parameter version of the function will set a single LED within the RGB LED either fully on or fully off. See the description of the 3 parameter version of this function for more details on the RGB LED.
See also

digitalWriteRGB(uint8_t, uint8_t, uint8_t) setRGBled() freeRGBled()

Definition at line 510 of file Arduboy2Core.cpp.

6.3.2.21 digitalWriteRGB() [2/2]

void Arduboy2Core::digitalWriteRGB {
    uint8_t red,
    uint8_t green,
    uint8_t blue } [static], [inherited]

Set the RGB LEDs digitally, to either fully on or fully off.

Parameters

| red | green | blue | Use value RGB_ON or RGB_OFF to set each LED. |

The RGB LED is actually individual red, green and blue LEDs placed very close together in a single package. This 3 parameter version of the function will set each LED either on or off, to set the RGB LED to 7 different colors at their highest brightness or turn it off.

The colors are as follows:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>RED LED</th>
<th>GREEN LED</th>
<th>BLUE LED</th>
<th>COLOR</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>RGB_OFF</td>
<td>RGB_OFF</td>
<td>RGB_OFF</td>
<td>OFF</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>RGB_OFF</td>
<td>RGB_OFF</td>
<td>RGB_ON</td>
<td>Blue</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>RGB_OFF</td>
<td>RGB_ON</td>
<td>RGB_OFF</td>
<td>Green</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>RGB_OFF</td>
<td>RGB_ON</td>
<td>RGB_ON</td>
<td>Cyan</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>RGB_ON</td>
<td>RGB_OFF</td>
<td>RGB_OFF</td>
<td>Red</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>RGB_ON</td>
<td>RGB_OFF</td>
<td>RGB_ON</td>
<td>Magenta</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>RGB_ON</td>
<td>RGB_ON</td>
<td>RGB_ON</td>
<td>White</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Note

Using the RGB LED in analog mode will prevent digital control of the LED. To restore the ability to control the LED digitally, use the freeRGBled() function.

Note

Many of the Kickstarter Arduboy 2S were accidentally shipped with the RGB LED installed incorrectly. For these units, the green LED cannot be lit. As long as the green led is set to off, turning on the red LED will actually light the blue LED and turning on the blue LED will actually light the red LED. If the green LED is turned on, none of the LEDs will light.

See also

digitalWriteRGB(uint8_t, uint8_t) setRGBled() freeRGBled()

Definition at line 496 of file Arduboy2Core.cpp.

6.3.2.22 display() [1/2]

void Arduboy2Base::display () [static]

Copy the contents of the display buffer to the display.
The contents of the display buffer in RAM are copied to the display and will appear on the screen.
6.3 Arduboy2Base Class Reference

See also

display(bool)

Definition at line 997 of file Arduboy2.cpp.

6.3.2.23 display() [2/2]

void Arduboy2Base::display (  
  bool clear ) [static]

Copy the contents of the display buffer to the display. The display buffer can optionally be cleared.

Parameters

| clear | If true the display buffer will be cleared to zero. The defined value CLEAR_BUFFER should be used instead of true to make it more meaningful. |

Operation is the same as calling display() without parameters except additionally the display buffer will be cleared if the parameter evaluates to true. (The defined value CLEAR_BUFFER can be used for this)

Using display(CLEAR_BUFFER) is faster and produces less code than calling display() followed by clear().

See also

display() clear()

Definition at line 1002 of file Arduboy2.cpp.

6.3.2.24 displayOff()

void Arduboy2Core::displayOff ( ) [static], [inherited]

Turn the display off.
The display will clear and be put into a low power mode. This can be used to extend battery life when a game is paused or when a sketch doesn't require anything to be displayed for a relatively long period of time.

See also

displayOn()

Definition at line 295 of file Arduboy2Core.cpp.

6.3.2.25 displayOn()

void Arduboy2Core::displayOn ( ) [static], [inherited]

Turn the display on.
Used to power up and reinitialize the display after calling displayOff().

Note

The previous call to displayOff() will have caused the display's buffer contents to be lost. The display will have to be re-painted, which is usually done by calling display().

See also

displayOff()

Definition at line 306 of file Arduboy2Core.cpp.
### 6.3.2.26 drawBitmap()

```cpp
void Arduboy2Base::drawBitmap (  
  int16_t x,  
  int16_t y,  
  const uint8_t * bitmap,  
  uint8_t w,  
  uint8_t h,  
  uint8_t color = WHITE ) [static]
```

Draw a bitmap from an array in program memory.

**Parameters**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Parameter</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><code>x</code></td>
<td>The X coordinate of the top left pixel affected by the bitmap.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>y</code></td>
<td>The Y coordinate of the top left pixel affected by the bitmap.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>bitmap</code></td>
<td>A pointer to the bitmap array in program memory.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>w</code></td>
<td>The width of the bitmap in pixels.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>h</code></td>
<td>The height of the bitmap in pixels. Must be a multiple of 8.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>color</code></td>
<td>The color of pixels for bits set to 1 in the bitmap. If the value is INVERT, bits set to 1 will invert the corresponding pixel. (optional; defaults to WHITE).</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Bits set to 1 in the provided bitmap array will have their corresponding pixel set to the specified color. For bits set to 0 in the array, the corresponding pixel will be left unchanged.

Each byte in the array specifies a vertical column of 8 pixels, with the least significant bit at the top. The height of the image must be a multiple of 8 pixels (8, 16, 24, 32, ...). The width can be any size.

The array must be located in program memory by using the PROGMEM modifier.

See also:
- `drawCompressed()`
- `drawSlowXYBitmap()`
- Sprites

Definition at line 803 of file Arduboy2.cpp.

### 6.3.2.27 drawCircle()

```cpp
void Arduboy2Base::drawCircle (  
  int16_t x0,  
  int16_t y0,  
  uint8_t r,  
  uint8_t color = WHITE ) [static]
```

Draw a circle of a given radius.

**Parameters**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Parameter</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><code>x0</code></td>
<td>The X coordinate of the circle's center.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>y0</code></td>
<td>The Y coordinate of the circle's center.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>r</code></td>
<td>The radius of the circle in pixels.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>color</code></td>
<td>The circle's color (optional; defaults to WHITE).</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Generated on Tue Sep 29 2020 14:29:54 for Arduboy2 Library by Doxygen
6.3.2.28 drawCompressed()

```cpp
void Arduboy2Base::drawCompressed (  
    int16_t sx,  
    int16_t sy,  
    const uint8_t * bitmap,  
    uint8_t color = WHITE ) [static]
```

Draw a bitmap from an array of compressed data.

**Parameters**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Variable</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>sx</td>
<td>The X coordinate of the top left pixel affected by the bitmap.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sy</td>
<td>The Y coordinate of the top left pixel affected by the bitmap.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bitmap</td>
<td>A pointer to the compressed bitmap array in program memory.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>color</td>
<td>The color of pixels for bits set to 1 in the bitmap. (optional; defaults to WHITE).</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Draw a bitmap starting at the given coordinates using an array that has been compressed using an RLE algorithm implemented by Team A.R.G.

The height of the image must be a multiple of 8 pixels (8, 16, 24, 32, ...). The width can be any size.

Bits set to 1 in the provided bitmap array (after decoding) will have their corresponding pixel set to the specified color. For bits set to 0 in the array, the corresponding pixel will be left unchanged.

The array must be located in program memory by using the PROGMEM modifier.

**Note**

C source code for a command line program named Cabi, which can convert a PNG bitmap image file to source code suitable for use with `drawCompressed()`, is included in the `extras` directory of the library.

See also

- `drawBitmap()`
- `drawSlowXYBitmap()`

Definition at line 902 of file Arduboy2.cpp.

6.3.2.29 drawFastHLine()

```cpp
void Arduboy2Base::drawFastHLine (  
    int16_t x,  
    int16_t y,  
    uint8_t w,  
    uint8_t color = WHITE ) [static]
```

Draw a horizontal line.

**Parameters**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Variable</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>x</td>
<td>The X coordinate of the left start point.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>y</td>
<td>The Y coordinate of the left start point.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>w</td>
<td>The width of the line.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>color</td>
<td>The color of the line (optional; defaults to WHITE).</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
See also:

`drawFastVLine() drawLine()`

Definition at line 557 of file Arduboy2.cpp.

### 6.3.2.30 `drawFastVLine()`

```cpp
void Arduboy2Base::drawFastVLine ( int16_t x, int16_t y, uint8_t h, uint8_t color = WHITE ) [static]
```

Draw a vertical line.

**Parameters**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><code>x</code></td>
<td>The X coordinate of the upper start point.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>y</code></td>
<td>The Y coordinate of the upper start point.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>h</code></td>
<td>The height of the line.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>color</code></td>
<td>The color of the line (optional; defaults to WHITE).</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

See also:

`drawFastHLine() drawLine()`

Definition at line 547 of file Arduboy2.cpp.

### 6.3.2.31 `drawLine()`

```cpp
void Arduboy2Base::drawLine ( int16_t x0, int16_t y0, int16_t x1, int16_t y1, uint8_t color = WHITE ) [static]
```

Draw a line between two specified points.

**Parameters**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><code>x0,x1</code></td>
<td>The X coordinates of the line ends.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>y0,y1</code></td>
<td>The Y coordinates of the line ends.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>color</code></td>
<td>The line's color (optional; defaults to WHITE).</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Draw a line from the start point to the end point using Bresenham's algorithm. The start and end points can be at any location with respect to the other.

See also:

`drawFastHLine() drawFastVLine()`

Definition at line 487 of file Arduboy2.cpp.

### 6.3.2.32 `drawPixel()`

```cpp
void Arduboy2Base::drawPixel ( int16_t x, 
```

Generated on Tue Sep 29 2020 14:29:54 for Arduboy2 Library by Doxygen
Set a single pixel in the display buffer to the specified color.

**Parameters**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Parameter</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>(x)</td>
<td>The X coordinate of the pixel.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(y)</td>
<td>The Y coordinate of the pixel.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(\text{color})</td>
<td>The color of the pixel (optional; defaults to \texttt{WHITE}).</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The single pixel specified location in the display buffer is set to the specified color. The values \texttt{WHITE} or \texttt{BLACK} can be used for the color. If the \texttt{color} parameter isn't included, the pixel will be set to \texttt{WHITE}.

Definition at line 295 of file Arduboy2.cpp.

### 6.3.2.33 drawRect()

```cpp
void Arduboy2Base::drawRect (  
    int16_t \(x\),  
    int16_t \(y\),  
    uint8_t \(w\),  
    uint8_t \(h\),  
    uint8_t \(\text{color} = \texttt{WHITE}\) ) [static]
```

Draw a rectangle of a specified width and height.

**Parameters**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Parameter</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>(x)</td>
<td>The X coordinate of the upper left corner.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(y)</td>
<td>The Y coordinate of the upper left corner.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(w)</td>
<td>The width of the rectangle.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(h)</td>
<td>The height of the rectangle.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(\text{color})</td>
<td>The color of the pixel (optional; defaults to \texttt{WHITE}).</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

See also

- fillRect()
- drawRoundRect()
- fillRoundRect()

Definition at line 538 of file Arduboy2.cpp.

### 6.3.2.34 drawRoundRect()

```cpp
void Arduboy2Base::drawRoundRect (  
    int16_t \(x\),  
    int16_t \(y\),  
    uint8_t \(w\),  
    uint8_t \(h\),  
    uint8_t \(r\),  
    uint8_t \(\text{color} = \texttt{WHITE}\) ) [static]
```

Draw a rectangle with rounded corners.

**Parameters**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Parameter</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>(x)</td>
<td>The X coordinate of the left edge.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(y)</td>
<td>The Y coordinate of the top edge.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(w)</td>
<td>The width of the rectangle.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(h)</td>
<td>The height of the rectangle.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Parameters

<p>| | |</p>
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>$r$</td>
<td>The radius of the semicircles forming the corners.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>color</code></td>
<td>The color of the rectangle (optional; defaults to WHITE).</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

See also

- `fillRoundRect() drawRect() fillRect()`

Definition at line 666 of file Arduboy2.cpp.

### 6.3.2.35 drawSlowXYBitmap()

```cpp
void Arduboy2Base::drawSlowXYBitmap (  
    int16_t x,  
    int16_t y,  
    const uint8_t * bitmap,  
    uint8_t w,  
    uint8_t h,  
    uint8_t color = WHITE ) [static]
```

Draw a bitmap from a horizontally oriented array in program memory.

Parameters

<p>| | |</p>
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>$x$</td>
<td>The X coordinate of the top left pixel affected by the bitmap.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>$y$</td>
<td>The Y coordinate of the top left pixel affected by the bitmap.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>bitmap</code></td>
<td>A pointer to the bitmap array in program memory.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>$w$</td>
<td>The width of the bitmap in pixels.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>$h$</td>
<td>The height of the bitmap in pixels.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>color</code></td>
<td>The color of pixels for bits set to 1 in the bitmap. (optional; defaults to WHITE).</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Bits set to 1 in the provided bitmap array will have their corresponding pixel set to the specified color. For bits set to 0 in the array, the corresponding pixel will be left unchanged. Each byte in the array specifies a horizontal row of 8 pixels, with the most significant bit at the left end of the row. The array must be located in program memory by using the PROGMEM modifier.

Note

This function requires a lot of additional CPU power and will draw images slower than `drawBitmap()`, which uses bitmaps that are stored in a format that allows them to be directly written to the screen. It is recommended you use `drawBitmap()` when possible.

See also

- `drawBitmap() drawCompressed()`

Definition at line 849 of file Arduboy2.cpp.

### 6.3.2.36 drawTriangle()

```cpp
void Arduboy2Base::drawTriangle (  
    int16_t x0,  
    int16_t y0,  
    int16_t x1,  
    int16_t y1,  
    int16_t x2,  
    int16_t y2,  
```
int16_t y2,
    uint8_t color = WHITE ) [static]

draw a triangle given the coordinates of each corner.

parameters:

| x0, x1, x2 | the x coordinates of the corners. |
| y0, y1, y2 | the y coordinates of the corners. |
| color      | the triangle's color (optional; defaults to white). |

a triangle is drawn by specifying each of the three corner locations. the corners can be at any position with respect to the others.

see also

fillTriangle()

definition at line 692 of file arduboy2.cpp.

6.3.2.37 everyXFrames()  
bool Arduboy2Base::everyXFrames (  
    uint8_t frames ) [static]

indicate if the specified number of frames has elapsed.

parameters:

frames the desired number of elapsed frames.

returns

true if the specified number of frames has elapsed.

this function should be called with the same value each time for a given event. it will return true if the given number of frames has elapsed since the previous frame in which it returned true.

for example, if you wanted to fire a shot every 5 frames while the a button is being held down:

if (arduboy.everyXFrames(5)) {  
    if arduboy.pressed(A_BUTTON) {  
      fireShot();  
    }  
}  

see also

setFrameRate() setFrameDuration() nextFrame()

definition at line 232 of file arduboy2.cpp.

6.3.2.38 exitToBootloader()  
void Arduboy2Core::exitToBootloader ( ) [static], [inherited]

exit the sketch and start the bootloader.

the sketch will exit and the bootloader will be started in command mode. the effect will be similar to pressing the reset button.

this function is intended to be used to allow uploading a new sketch, when the USB code has been removed to gain more code space. ideally, the sketch would present a "new sketch upload" menu or prompt telling the user to "press and hold the down button when the procedure to upload a new sketch has been initiated". the sketch would then wait for the DOWN button to be pressed and then call this function.
See also

ARDUBOY_NO_USB

Definition at line 587 of file Arduboy2Core.cpp.

### 6.3.2.39 fillCircle()

```cpp
template<>
void Arduboy2Base::fillCircle ( int16_t x0, int16_t y0, uint8_t r, uint8_t color = WHITE ) [static]
```

**Draw a filled-in circle of a given radius.**

**Parameters**

| x0 | The X coordinate of the circle's center. |
| y0 | The Y coordinate of the circle's center. |
| r  | The radius of the circle in pixels.     |
| color | The circle's color (optional; defaults to WHITE). |

See also

`drawCircle()`

Definition at line 444 of file Arduboy2.cpp.

### 6.3.2.40 fillRect()

```cpp
template<>
void Arduboy2Base::fillRect ( int16_t x, int16_t y, uint8_t w, uint8_t h, uint8_t color = WHITE ) [static]
```

**Draw a filled-in rectangle of a specified width and height.**

**Parameters**

| x  | The X coordinate of the upper left corner. |
| y  | The Y coordinate of the upper left corner. |
| w  | The width of the rectangle.               |
| h  | The height of the rectangle.              |
| color | The color of the pixel (optional; defaults to WHITE). |

See also

`drawRect()` `drawRoundRect()` `fillRoundRect()`

Definition at line 608 of file Arduboy2.cpp.

### 6.3.2.41 fillRoundRect()

```cpp
template<>
void Arduboy2Base::fillRoundRect ( int16_t x, int16_t y, uint8_t w, uint8_t h, uint8_t color = WHITE ) [static]
```

Generated on Tue Sep 29 2020 14:29:54 for Arduboy2 Library by Doxygen
6.3 Arduboy2Base Class Reference

```cpp
int16_t y,
uint8_t w,
uint8_t h,
uint8_t r,
uint8_t color = WHITE ) [static]
```

Draw a filled-in rectangle with rounded corners.

**Parameters**

<p>| | |</p>
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>x</td>
<td>The X coordinate of the left edge.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>y</td>
<td>The Y coordinate of the top edge.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>w</td>
<td>The width of the rectangle.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>h</td>
<td>The height of the rectangle.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>r</td>
<td>The radius of the semicircles forming the corners.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>color</td>
<td>The color of the rectangle (optional; defaults to WHITE).</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

See also

- `drawRoundRect()`
- `drawRect()`
- `fillRect()`

Definition at line 681 of file Arduboy2.cpp.

### 6.3.2.42 fillScreen()

```cpp
void Arduboy2Base::fillScreen (  
    uint8_t color = WHITE ) [static]
```

Fill the screen buffer with the specified color.

**Parameters**

| color | The fill color (optional; defaults to WHITE). |

See also

- `clear()`

Definition at line 618 of file Arduboy2.cpp.

### 6.3.2.43 fillTriangle()

```cpp
void Arduboy2Base::fillTriangle (  
    int16_t x0,
    int16_t y0,
    int16_t x1,
    int16_t y1,
    int16_t x2,
    int16_t y2,
    uint8_t color = WHITE ) [static]
```

Draw a filled-in triangle given the coordinates of each corner.

**Parameters**

| x0,x1,x2 | The X coordinates of the corners. |
| y0,y1,y2 | The Y coordinates of the corners. |
| color | The triangle's color (optional; defaults to WHITE). |
A triangle is drawn by specifying each of the three corner locations. The corners can be at any position with respect to the others.

See also

drawTriangle()

Definition at line 700 of file Arduboy2.cpp.

6.3.2.44 flashlight()

void Arduboy2Base::flashlight () [static]

Turn the RGB LED and display fully on to act as a small flashlight/torch.

Checks if the UP button is pressed and if so turns the RGB LED and all display pixels fully on. If the UP button is detected, this function does not exit. The Arduboy must be restarted after flashlight mode is used.

This function is called by begin() and should be called by a sketch after boot() unless safeMode() is called instead.

Note

This function also contains code to address a problem with uploading a new sketch, for sketches that interfere with the bootloader “magic number”. This problem occurs with certain sketches that use large amounts of RAM. Being in flashlight mode when uploading a new sketch can fix this problem.

Therefore, for sketches that use boot() instead of begin(), a call to flashlight() should be included after calling boot(). If program space is limited, safeMode() can be used instead of flashlight().

See also

begin() boot() safeMode()

Definition at line 62 of file Arduboy2.cpp.

6.3.2.45 flipHorizontal()

void Arduboy2Core::flipHorizontal ( bool flipped ) [static], [inherited]

Flip the display horizontally or set it back to normal.

Parameters

flipped | true will set horizontal flip mode. false will set normal horizontal orientation.

Calling this function with a value of true will cause the X coordinate to start at the left edge of the display instead of the right, effectively flipping the display horizontally.

Once in horizontal flip mode, it will remain this way until normal horizontal mode is set by calling this function with a value of false.

See also

flipVertical()

Definition at line 434 of file Arduboy2Core.cpp.

6.3.2.46 flipVertical()

void Arduboy2Core::flipVertical ( bool flipped ) [static], [inherited]

Flip the display vertically or set it back to normal.
Parameters

| flipped | true will set vertical flip mode. false will set normal vertical orientation. |

Calling this function with a value of `true` will cause the Y coordinate to start at the bottom edge of the display instead of the top, effectively flipping the display vertically. Once in vertical flip mode, it will remain this way until normal vertical mode is set by calling this function with a value of `false`.

See also

`flipHorizontal()`

Definition at line 428 of file Arduboy2Core.cpp.

### 6.3.2.47 freeRGBled()

```cpp
void Arduboy2Core::freeRGBled ( ) [static], [inherited]
```

Relinquish analog control of the RGB LED. Using the RGB LED in analog mode prevents further use of the LED in digital mode. This function will restore the pins used for the LED, so it can be used in digital mode.

See also

`digitalWriteRGB()`, `setRGBled()`

Definition at line 487 of file Arduboy2Core.cpp.

### 6.3.2.48 generateRandomSeed()

```cpp
unsigned long Arduboy2Core::generateRandomSeed ( ) [static], [inherited]
```

Create a seed suitable for use with a pseudorandom number generator.

Returns

A random value that can be used to seed a pseudorandom number generator.

The returned value will be a random value derived from entropy from an ADC reading of a floating pin combined with the microseconds since boot.

Note

This function will be more effective if called after a semi-random time, such as after waiting for the user to press a button to start a game, or another event that takes a variable amount of time after boot.

See also

`Arduboy2Base::initRandomSeed()`

Definition at line 564 of file Arduboy2Core.cpp.

### 6.3.2.49 getBuffer()

```cpp
uint8_t * Arduboy2Base::getBuffer ( ) [static]
```

Get a pointer to the display buffer in RAM.

Returns

A pointer to the display buffer array in RAM.

The location of the display buffer in RAM, which is displayed using `display()`, can be gotten using this function. The buffer can then be read and directly manipulated.
The display buffer array, \texttt{sBuffer}, is public. A sketch can access it directly. Doing so may be more efficient than accessing it via the pointer returned by \texttt{getBuffer()}. 

See also 
\texttt{sBuffer}

Definition at line 1007 of file Arduboy2.cpp.

6.3.2.50 \texttt{getPixel()}

\begin{verbatim}
uint8_t Arduboy2Base::getPixel ( 
    uint8_t x, 
    uint8_t y ) [static]
\end{verbatim}

Returns the state of the given pixel in the screen buffer.

Parameters
\begin{verbatim}
\begin{tabular}{|l|l|}
\hline
\texttt{x} & The X coordinate of the pixel. \\
\texttt{y} & The Y coordinate of the pixel. \\
\hline
\end{tabular}
\end{verbatim}

Returns
WHITE if the pixel is on or BLACK if the pixel is off.

Definition at line 355 of file Arduboy2.cpp.

6.3.2.51 \texttt{height()}

\begin{verbatim}
static constexpr uint8_t Arduboy2Core::height ( ) [inline], [static], [constexpr], [inherited]
\end{verbatim}

Get the height of the display in pixels.

Returns
The height of the display in pixels.

Definition at line 471 of file Arduboy2Core.h.

6.3.2.52 \texttt{idle()}

\begin{verbatim}
void Arduboy2Core::idle ( ) [static], [inherited]
\end{verbatim}

Idle the CPU to save power.
This puts the CPU in \texttt{idle} sleep mode. You should call this as often as you can for the best power savings. The timer 0 overflow interrupt will wake up the chip every 1ms, so even at 60 FPS a well written app should be able to sleep maybe half the time in between rendering it's own frames.

Definition at line 278 of file Arduboy2Core.cpp.

6.3.2.53 \texttt{initRandomSeed()}

\begin{verbatim}
void Arduboy2Base::initRandomSeed ( ) [static]
\end{verbatim}

Seed the random number generator with a random value.
The Arduino pseudorandom number generator is seeded with the random value returned from a call to \texttt{generateRandomSeed()}. 

Generated on Tue Sep 29 2020 14:29:54 for Arduboy2 Library by Doxygen
Note

This function will be more effective if called after a semi-random time, such as after waiting for the user to press a button to start a game, or another event that takes a variable amount of time after boot.

See also

```
generateRandomSeed()
```

Definition at line 1033 of file Arduboy2.cpp.

6.3.2.54 invert()

```cpp
void Arduboy2Core::invert (bool inverse ) [static], [inherited]
```

Invert the entire display or set it back to normal.

Parameters

- **inverse**
  - true will invert the display.
  - false will set the display to no-inverted.

Calling this function with a value of true will set the display to inverted mode. A pixel with a value of 0 will be on and a pixel set to 1 will be off.

Once in inverted mode, the display will remain this way until it is set back to non-inverted mode by calling this function with false.

Definition at line 415 of file Arduboy2Core.cpp.

6.3.2.55 justPressed()

```cpp
bool Arduboy2Base::justPressed (uint8_t button ) [static]
```

Check if a button has just been pressed.

Parameters

- **button**
  - The button to test for. Only one button should be specified.

Returns

- true if the specified button has just been pressed.

Return true if the given button was pressed between the latest call to `pollButtons()` and previous call to `pollButtons()`. If the button has been held down over multiple polls, this function will return false.

There is no need to check for the release of the button since it must have been released for this function to return true when pressed again.

This function should only be used to test a single button.

See also

```
pollButtons() justReleased()
```

Definition at line 1033 of file Arduboy2.cpp.

6.3.2.56 justReleased()

```cpp
bool Arduboy2Base::justReleased (uint8_t button ) [static]
```

Check if a button has just been released.
Parameters

| button | The button to test for. Only one button should be specified. |

Returns

true if the specified button has just been released.

Return true if the given button, having previously been pressed, was released between the latest call to pollButtons() and previous call to pollButtons(). If the button has remained released over multiple polls, this function will return false.

There is no need to check for the button having been pressed since it must have been previously pressed for this function to return true upon release.

This function should only be used to test a single button.

Note

There aren’t many cases where this function would be needed. Wanting to know if a button has been released, without knowing when it was pressed, is uncommon.

See also

pollButtons() justPressed()

Definition at line 1038 of file Arduboy2.cpp.

6.3.2.57  LCDCommandMode()

void Arduboy2Core::LCDCommandMode () [static], [inherited]

Put the display into command mode.

When placed in command mode, data that is sent to the display will be treated as commands.

See the SSD1306 controller and OLED display documents for available commands and command sequences.

Links:

• https://www.adafruit.com/datasheets/SSD1306.pdf


Note

This is a low level function that is not intended for general use in a sketch. It has been made public and documented for use by derived classes.

See also

LCDDataMode() sendLCDCommand() SPItransfer()

Definition at line 225 of file Arduboy2Core.cpp.

6.3.2.58  LCDDataMode()

void Arduboy2Core::LCDDataMode () [static], [inherited]

Put the display into data mode.

When placed in data mode, data that is sent to the display will be considered as data to be displayed.

Note

This is a low level function that is not intended for general use in a sketch. It has been made public and documented for use by derived classes.

See also

LCDCommandMode() SPItransfer()

Definition at line 220 of file Arduboy2Core.cpp.
6.3.2.59 nextFrame()

bool Arduboy2Base::nextFrame () [static]

Indicate that it's time to render the next frame.

Returns

ture if it's time for the next frame.

When this function returns true, the amount of time has elapsed to display the next frame, as specified by setFrameRate() or setFrameDuration(). This function will normally be called at the start of the rendering loop which would wait for true to be returned before rendering and displaying the next frame.

eexample:

```c
void loop() {
  if (!arduboy.nextFrame()) {
    return; // go back to the start of the loop
  }
  // render and display the next frame
}
```

See also

setFrameRate() setFrameDuration() nextFrameDEV()

Definition at line 237 of file Arduboy2.cpp.

6.3.2.60 nextFrameDEV()

bool Arduboy2Base::nextFrameDEV () [static]

Indicate that it's time to render the next frame, and visually indicate if the code is running slower than the desired frame rate. FOR USE DURING DEVELOPMENT

Returns

ture if it's time for the next frame.

This function is intended to be used in place of nextFrame() during the development of a sketch. It does the same thing as nextFrame() but additionally will light the yellow TX LED (at the bottom, to the left of the U←SB connector) whenever a frame takes longer to generate than the time allotted per frame, as determined by the setFrameRate() or setFrameDuration() function. Therefore, whenever the TX LED comes on (while not communicating over USB), it indicates that the sketch is running slower than the desired rate set by setFrameRate() or setFrameDuration(). In this case the developer may wish to set a slower frame rate, or reduce or optimize the code for such frames.

Note

Once a sketch is ready for release, it would be expected that nextFrameDEV() calls be restored to nextFrame().

See also

nextFrame() cpuLoad() setFrameRate() setFrameDuration()

Definition at line 265 of file Arduboy2.cpp.

6.3.2.61 notPressed()

bool Arduboy2Base::notPressed (uint8_t buttons) [static]

Test if the specified buttons are not pressed.

Parameters

| buttons | A bit mask indicating which buttons to test. (Can be a single button) |

Generated on Tue Sep 29 2020 14:29:54 for Arduboy2 Library by Doxygen
Returns

true if *all* buttons in the provided mask are currently released.

Read the state of the buttons and return true if all the buttons in the specified mask are currently released.

**Example:**

```c
if (notPressed(UP_BUTTON))
```

**Note**

This function does not perform any button debouncing.

**See also**

pressed() anyPressed()

Definition at line 1022 of file Arduboy2.cpp.

### 6.3.2.62 paint8Pixels()

```c
void Arduboy2Core::paint8Pixels (  
    uint8_t pixels ) [static], [inherited]
```

Paint 8 pixels vertically to the display.

**Parameters**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>pixels</th>
<th>A byte whose bits specify a vertical column of 8 pixels.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

A byte representing a vertical column of 8 pixels is written to the display at the current page and column address. The address is then incremented. The page/column address will wrap to the start of the display (the top left) when it increments past the end (lower right).

The least significant bit represents the top pixel in the column. A bit set to 1 is lit, 0 is unlit.

**Example:**

```text
X = lit pixels, . = unlit pixels
```

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>blank()</th>
<th>paint8Pixels() 0xFF, 0, 0xF0, 0, 0x0F</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>v TOP LEFT corner (8x9)</td>
<td>v TOP LEFT corner</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>. . . . . . (page 1)</td>
<td>X . . X . . . (page 1)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>. . . . . .</td>
<td>X . . X . . .</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>. . . . . .</td>
<td>X . . X . . .</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>. . . . . .</td>
<td>X . . X . . .</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>. . . . . .</td>
<td>X . . X . . .</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>. . . . . .</td>
<td>X . . X . . .</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>. . . . . . (end of page 1)</td>
<td>X . X . . . . (end of page 1)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>. . . . . . (page 2)</td>
<td>. . . . . . (page 2)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Definition at line 314 of file Arduboy2Core.cpp.

### 6.3.2.63 paintScreen() [1/2]

```c
void Arduboy2Core::paintScreen (  
    const uint8_t * image ) [static], [inherited]
```

Paints an entire image directly to the display from program memory.

**Parameters**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>image</th>
<th>A byte array in program memory representing the entire contents of the display.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

The contents of the specified array in program memory is written to the display. Each byte in the array represents a vertical column of 8 pixels with the least significant bit at the top. The bytes are written starting at the top left, progressing horizontally and wrapping at the end of each row, to the bottom right. The size of the array must exactly
match the number of pixels in the entire display.

See also

paint8Pixels()

Definition at line 319 of file Arduboy2Core.cpp.

6.3.2.64 paintScreen() [2/2]

```c
void Arduboy2Core::paintScreen (  
    uint8_t image[],  
    bool clear = false ) [static], [inherited]
```

Paints an entire image directly to the display from an array in RAM.

Parameters

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>image</th>
<th>A byte array in RAM representing the entire contents of the display.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>clear</td>
<td>If <code>true</code> the array in RAM will be cleared to zeros upon return from this function. If <code>false</code> the RAM buffer will remain unchanged. (optional; defaults to <code>false</code>)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The contents of the specified array in RAM is written to the display. Each byte in the array represents a vertical column of 8 pixels with the least significant bit at the top. The bytes are written starting at the top left, progressing horizontally and wrapping at the end of each row, to the bottom right. The size of the array must exactly match the number of pixels in the entire display.

If parameter `clear` is set to `true` the RAM array will be cleared to zeros after its contents are written to the display.

See also

paint8Pixels()

Definition at line 333 of file Arduboy2Core.cpp.

6.3.2.65 pollButtons()

```c
void Arduboy2Base::pollButtons ( ) [static]
```

Poll the buttons and track their state over time.

Read and save the current state of the buttons and also keep track of the button state when this function was previously called. These states are used by the `justPressed()` and `justReleased()` functions to determine if a button has changed state between now and the previous call to `pollButtons()`.

This function should be called once at the start of each new frame.

The `justPressed()` and `justReleased()` functions rely on this function.

example:

```c
void loop() {  
    if (!arduboy.nextFrame()) {  
        return;  
    }  
    arduboy.pollButtons();  
    // use justPressed() as necessary to determine if a button was just pressed
}
```

Note

As long as the elapsed time between calls to this function is long enough, buttons will be naturally debounced. Calling it once per frame at a frame rate of 60 or lower (or possibly somewhat higher), should be sufficient.

See also

justPressed() justReleased() currentButtonState previousButtonState

Definition at line 1027 of file Arduboy2.cpp.
6.3.2.66  pressed()

bool Arduboy2Base::pressed (  
    uint8_t buttons  )  [static]

Test if the all of the specified buttons are pressed.

Parameters

| buttons  | A bit mask indicating which buttons to test. (Can be a single button) |

Returns

true if all buttons in the provided mask are currently pressed.

Read the state of the buttons and return true if all of the buttons in the specified mask are being pressed.

Example: if (pressed(LEFT_BUTTON | A_BUTTON))

Note

This function does not perform any button debouncing.

See also

anyPressed() notPressed()

Definition at line 1012 of file Arduboy2.cpp.

6.3.2.67  readShowBootLogoFlag()

bool Arduboy2Base::readShowBootLogoFlag ( )  [static]

Read the "Show Boot Logo" flag in system EEPROM.

Returns

true if the flag is set to indicate that the boot logo sequence should be displayed. false if the flag is set to not display the boot logo sequence.

The "Show Boot Logo" flag is used to determine whether the system boot logo sequence is to be displayed when the system boots up. This function returns the value of this flag.

See also

writeShowBootLogoFlag() bootLogo()

Definition at line 1105 of file Arduboy2.cpp.

6.3.2.68  readShowBootLogoLEDsFlag()

bool Arduboy2Base::readShowBootLogoLEDsFlag ( )  [static]

Read the "Show LEDs with boot logo" flag in system EEPROM.

Returns

true if the flag is set to indicate that the RGB LEDs should be flashed. false if the flag is set to leave the LEDs off.

The "Show LEDs with boot logo" flag is used to determine whether the RGB LEDs should be flashed in sequence while the boot logo is being displayed. This function returns the value of this flag.

See also

writeShowBootLogoLEDsFlag()

Definition at line 1131 of file Arduboy2.cpp.
6.3.2.69 readShowUnitNameFlag()

bool Arduboy2Base::readShowUnitNameFlag ( ) [static]
Read the "Show Unit Name" flag in system EEPROM.

Returns

true if the flag is set to indicate that the unit name should be displayed. false if the flag is set to not display the unit name.

The "Show Unit Name" flag is used to determine whether the system unit name is to be displayed at the end of the boot logo sequence. This function returns the value of this flag.

See also

writeShowUnitNameFlag() writeUnitName() readUnitName() Arduboy2::bootLogoExtra()

Definition at line 1118 of file Arduboy2.cpp.

6.3.2.70 readUnitID()

uint16_t Arduboy2Base::readUnitID ( ) [static]
Read the unit ID from system EEPROM.

Returns

The value of the unit ID stored in system EEPROM.

This function reads the unit ID that has been set in system EEPROM. The ID can be any value. It is intended to allow different units to be uniquely identified.

See also

writeUnitID() readUnitName()

Definition at line 1057 of file Arduboy2.cpp.

6.3.2.71 readUnitName()

uint8_t Arduboy2Base::readUnitName ( char * name ) [static]
Read the unit name from system EEPROM.

Parameters

| name | A pointer to the first element of a char array in which the unit name will be written. The name will be up to ARDUBOY_UNIT_NAME_LEN characters in length and additionally terminated with a null (0x00) character, so the provided array MUST be at least ARDUBOY_UNIT_NAME_BUFFER_SIZE characters long. Using ARDUBOY_UNIT_NAME_BUFFER_SIZE to specify the array length is the proper way to do this, although any array larger than ARDUBOY_UNIT_NAME_BUFFER_SIZE is also acceptable. |

Returns

The length of the string (between 0 and ARDUBOY_UNIT_NAME_LEN inclusive).

This function reads the unit name that has been set in system EEPROM. The name represents characters in the library's font5x7 font. It can contain any values except 0xFF and the null (0x00) terminator value, plus the ASCII newline/line feed character (\n, 0x0A, inverse white circle) and ASCII carriage return character (\r, 0x0D, musical eighth note).

The name can be used for any purpose. It could identify the owner or give the unit itself a nickname. A sketch could
use it to automatically fill in a name or initials in a high score table, or display it as the "player" when the opponent
is the computer.

Note

The defined value ARDUBOY_UNIT_NAME_BUFFER_SIZE should be used to allocate an array to hold the
unit name string, instead of using a hard coded value for the size. For example, to allocate a buffer and read
the unit name into it:

```c
// Buffer large enough to hold the unit name and a null terminator
char unitName[ARDUBOY_UNIT_NAME_BUFFER_SIZE];
// After the call, unitNameLength will contain the actual name length,
// not including the null terminator.
uint8_t unitNameLength = arduboy.readUnitName(unitName);
```

See also

writeUnitName() readUnitID() Arduboy2::bootLogoExtra() ARDUBOY_UNIT_NAME_BUFFER_SIZE
ARDUBOY_UNIT_NAME_LEN Arduboy2::font5x7

Definition at line 1069 of file Arduboy2.cpp.

6.3.2.72 safeMode()

void Arduboy2Core::safeMode () [static], [inherited]
Allow upload when the bootloader "magic number" could be corrupted.
If the UP button is held when this function is entered, the RGB LED will be lit and timer 0 will be disabled, then
the sketch will remain in a tight loop. This is to address a problem with uploading a new sketch, for sketches that
interfere with the bootloader "magic number". The problem occurs with certain sketches that use large amounts of
RAM.
This function should be called after boot() in sketches that don't call flashlight().
It is intended to replace the flashlight() function when more program space is required. If possible, it is more
desirable to use flashlight(), so that the actual flashlight feature isn't lost.

See also

Arduboy2Base::flashlight() boot()

Definition at line 259 of file Arduboy2Core.cpp.

6.3.2.73 sendLCDCommand()

void Arduboy2Core::sendLCDCommand ( ) [static], [inherited]
Send a single command byte to the display.
Parameters

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Parameter</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>command</td>
<td>The command byte to send to the display.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The display will be set to command mode then the specified command byte will be sent. The display will then be
set to data mode. Multi-byte commands can be sent by calling this function multiple times.
6.3 Arduboy2Base Class Reference

Note
Sending improper commands to the display can place it into invalid or unexpected states, possibly even causing physical damage.

Definition at line 406 of file Arduboy2Core.cpp.

6.3.2.74 setFrameDuration()

```cpp
void Arduboy2Base::setFrameDuration (  
    uint8_t duration   ) [static]
```

Set the frame rate, used by the frame control functions, by giving the duration of each frame.

Parameters

| duration | The desired duration of each frame in milliseconds. |

Set the frame rate by specifying the duration of each frame in milliseconds. This is used by `nextFrame()` to update frames at a given rate. If this function or `setFrameRate()` isn't used, the default will be 16ms per frame. Normally, the frame rate would be set to the desired value once, at the start of the game, but it can be changed at any time to alter the frame update rate.

See also

`nextFrame()` `setFrameRate()`

Definition at line 227 of file Arduboy2.cpp.

6.3.2.75 setFrameRate()

```cpp
void Arduboy2Base::setFrameRate (  
    uint8_t rate    ) [static]
```

Set the frame rate used by the frame control functions.

Parameters

| rate | The desired frame rate in frames per second. |

Set the frame rate, in frames per second, used by `nextFrame()` to update frames at a given rate. If this function or `setFrameDuration()` isn't used, the default rate will be 60 (actually 62.5; see note below). Normally, the frame rate would be set to the desired value once, at the start of the game, but it can be changed at any time to alter the frame update rate.

Note

The given rate is internally converted to a frame duration in milliseconds, rounded down to the nearest integer. Therefore, the actual rate will be equal to or higher than the rate given.

For example, 60 FPS would be 16.67ms per frame. This will be rounded down to 16ms, giving an actual frame rate of 62.5 FPS.

See also

`nextFrame()` `setFrameDuration()`

Definition at line 222 of file Arduboy2.cpp.

6.3.2.76 setRGBled() [1/2]

```cpp
void Arduboy2Core::setRGBled (  
```

Generated on Tue Sep 29 2020 14:29:54 for Arduboy2 Library by Doxygen
```c
uint8_t color,
uint8_t val ) [static], [inherited]
```

Set the brightness of one of the RGB LEDs without affecting the others.

**Parameters**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>color</th>
<th>The name of the LED to set. The value given should be one of RED_LED, GREEN_LED or BLUE_LED.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>val</td>
<td>The brightness value for the LED, from 0 to 255.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Note**

In order to use this function, the 3 parameter version must first be called at least once, in order to initialize the hardware.

This 2 parameter version of the function will set the brightness of a single LED within the RGB LED without affecting the current brightness of the other two. See the description of the 3 parameter version of this function for more details on the RGB LED.

See also

- `setRGBled(uint8_t, uint8_t, uint8_t)`
- `digitalWriteRGB()`
- `freeRGBled()`

Definition at line 463 of file Arduboy2Core.cpp.

6.3.2.77 `setRGBled()` [2/2]

```c
void Arduboy2Core::setRGBled (  
  uint8_t red,
  uint8_t green,
  uint8_t blue ) [static], [inherited]
```

Set the light output of the RGB LED.

**Parameters**

| red, green, blue | The brightness value for each LED. |

The RGB LED is actually individual red, green and blue LEDs placed very close together in a single package. By setting the brightness of each LED, the RGB LED can show various colors and intensities. The brightness of each LED can be set to a value from 0 (fully off) to 255 (fully on).

**Note**

Certain libraries that take control of the hardware timers may interfere with the ability of this function to properly control the RGB LED. *ArduboyPlaytune* is one such library known to do this. The `digitalWriteRGB()` function will still work properly in this case.

**Note**

Many of the Kickstarter Arduboy units were accidentally shipped with the RGB LED installed incorrectly. For these units, the green LED cannot be lit. As long as the green LED is set to off, setting the red LED will actually control the blue LED and setting the blue LED will actually control the red LED. If the green LED is turned fully on, none of the LEDs will light.

See also

- `setRGBled(uint8_t, uint8_t)`
- `digitalWriteRGB()`
- `freeRGBled()`

Definition at line 441 of file Arduboy2Core.cpp.
6.3.2.78  SPItransfer()

```cpp
text

void Arduboy2Core::SPItransfer ( uint8_t data ) [static], [inherited]
```

Transfer one byte to the display over the SPI port and wait for the transfer to complete. The byte will either be interpreted as a command or as data to be placed on the screen, depending on the command/data mode.

See also

- LCDDataMode()
- LCDCommandMode()
- sendLCDCommand()
- SPItransferAndRead()

Definition at line 239 of file Arduboy2Core.cpp.

6.3.2.79  SPItransferAndRead()

```cpp
text

uint8_t Arduboy2Core::SPItransferAndRead ( uint8_t data ) [static], [inherited]
```

Transfer a byte to, and read a byte from, the SPI bus.

Parameters

- `data` The byte to be sent.

Returns

- The byte that was received.

This function does the same as the SPItransfer() function but also reads and returns the byte of data that was received during the transfer.

This function is of no use for a standard Arduboy, since only the display is connected to the SPI bus and data cannot be received from the display. It has been provided for use with homemade or expanded units that have had additional peripherals added to the SPI bus that are capable of sending data.

See also

- SPItransfer()

Definition at line 253 of file Arduboy2Core.cpp.

6.3.2.80  systemButtons()

```cpp
text

void Arduboy2Base::systemButtons ( ) [static]
```

Handle buttons held on startup for system control.

This function is called by `begin()` and can be called by a sketch after `boot()`.

Hold the B button when booting to enter system control mode. The B button must be held continuously to remain in this mode. Then, pressing other buttons will perform system control functions:

- UP: Set “sound enabled” in EEPROM
- DOWN: Set “sound disabled” (mute) in EEPROM

See also

- begin()
- boot()

Definition at line 83 of file Arduboy2.cpp.
6.3.2.81 waitNoButtons()

void Arduboy2Base::waitNoButtons ( ) [static]
Wait until all buttons have been released.
This function is called by begin() and can be called by a sketch after boot().
It won’t return unless no buttons are being pressed. A short delay is performed each time before testing the state of
the buttons to do a simple button debounce.
This function is called at the end of begin() to make sure no buttons used to perform system start up actions are
still being pressed, to prevent them from erroneously being detected by the sketch code itself.

See also
  
  begin() boot()

Definition at line 213 of file Arduboy2.cpp.

6.3.2.82 width()

static constexpr uint8_t Arduboy2Core::width ( ) [inline], [static], [constexpr], [inherited]
Get the width of the display in pixels.

Returns
  
  The width of the display in pixels.

Definition at line 464 of file Arduboy2Core.h.

6.3.2.83 writeShowBootLogoFlag()

void Arduboy2Base::writeShowBootLogoFlag ( 
  bool val ) [static]
Write the “Show Boot Logo” flag in system EEPROM.

Parameters

| val | If true the flag is set to indicate that the boot logo sequence should be displayed. If false the flag is set to not display the boot logo sequence. |

The “Show Boot Logo” flag is used to determine whether the system boot logo sequence is to be displayed when
the system boots up. This function allows the flag to be saved with the desired value.

See also
  
  readShowBootLogoFlag() bootLogo()

Definition at line 1110 of file Arduboy2.cpp.

6.3.2.84 writeShowBootLogoLEDsFlag()

void Arduboy2Base::writeShowBootLogoLEDsFlag ( 
  bool val ) [static]
Write the “Show LEDs with boot logo” flag in system EEPROM.

Parameters

| val | If true the flag is set to indicate that the RGB LEDs should be flashed. If false the flag is set to leave the LEDs off. |

The “Show LEDs with boot logo” flag is used to determine whether the RGB LEDs should be flashed in sequence.
while the boot logo is being displayed. This function allows the flag to be saved with the desired value.

See also

readShowBootLogoLEDsFlag()

Definition at line 1136 of file Arduboy2.cpp.

6.3.2.85 writeShowUnitNameFlag()

void Arduboy2Base::writeShowUnitNameFlag ( bool val ) [static]

Write the "Show Unit Name" flag in system EEPROM.

Parameters

| val | If true the flag is set to indicate that the unit name should be displayed. If false the flag is set to not display the unit name. |

The "Show Unit Name" flag is used to determine whether the system unit name is to be displayed at the end of the boot logo sequence. This function allows the flag to be saved with the desired value.

See also

readShowUnitNameFlag() writeUnitName() readUnitName() Arduboy2::bootLogoExtra()

Definition at line 1123 of file Arduboy2.cpp.

6.3.2.86 writeUnitID()

void Arduboy2Base::writeUnitID ( uint16_t id ) [static]

Write a unit ID to system EEPROM.

Parameters

| id | The value of the unit ID to be stored in system EEPROM. |

This function writes a unit ID to a reserved location in system EEPROM. The ID can be any value. It is intended to allow different units to be uniquely identified.

See also

readUnitID() writeUnitName()

Definition at line 1063 of file Arduboy2.cpp.

6.3.2.87 writeUnitName()

void Arduboy2Base::writeUnitName ( const char * name ) [static]

Write a unit name to system EEPROM.

Parameters

| name | A pointer to the first element of a C-style null-terminated string containing the unit name to be saved. The name can be up to ARDUBOY_UNIT_NAME_LEN characters long and must be terminated with a null (0x00) character. |
This function writes a unit name to a reserved area in system EEPROM. The name represents characters in the library's font5x7 font. It can contain any values except 0xFF and the null (0x00) terminator value, plus the ASCII newline/line feed character (\n, 0x0A, inverse white circle) and ASCII carriage return character (\r, 0x0D, musical eighth note) because of their special use by the library's text handling functions.

The name can be used for any purpose. It could identify the owner or give the unit itself a nickname. A sketch could use it to automatically fill in a name or initials in a high score table, or display it as the "player" when the opponent is the computer.

**Note**

The defined value ARDUBOY_UNIT_NAME_BUFFER_SIZE should be used to allocate an array to hold the unit name string, instead of using a hard coded value for the size.

See also

- readUnitName()
- writeUnitID()
- Arduboy2::bootLogoExtra()
- ARDUBOY_UNIT_NAME_BUFFER_SIZE
- ARDUBOY_UNIT_NAME_LEN
- Arduboy2::font5x7

Definition at line 1089 of file Arduboy2.cpp.

### Member Data Documentation

#### 6.3.3.1 arduboy_logo

const PROGMEM uint8_t Arduboy2Base::arduboy_logo [static]

**Initial value:**

```
0xF0, 0xF8, 0x9C, 0x8E, 0x87, 0x83, 0x87, 0x8E, 0x9C, 0xF8,
0xF0, 0x00, 0x00, 0xFE, 0xFF, 0x03, 0x03, 0x03, 0x03, 0x03,
0x03, 0x03, 0x03, 0x07, 0x0E, 0xFC, 0xF8, 0x00, 0x00, 0xFF,
0x00, 0x00, 0xFF, 0x83, 0x83, 0x83, 0x83, 0x83, 0x83, 0x83,
0x8E, 0x9C, 0x38, 0x00, 0x00, 0x00, 0xFE, 0xFF, 0x03, 0x03,
0x03, 0x03, 0x03, 0x07, 0x0E, 0xF8, 0x00, 0x00, 0x00, 0x00,
0x00, 0x00, 0x00, 0x00, 0x00, 0x00, 0x00, 0x00, 0x00, 0x00,
```

The bitmap for the ARDUBOY logo in `drawBitmap()` format.

See also

- bootLogo()
- drawBitmap()

Definition at line 1472 of file Arduboy2.h.

#### 6.3.3.2 arduboy_logo_compressed

const PROGMEM uint8_t Arduboy2Base::arduboy_logo_compressed [static]

**Initial value:**

```
0x57, 0x0F, 0x9C, 0x53, 0x72, 0x75, 0xE5, 0x9C, 0x92,
0xCE, 0x95, 0x52, 0xAD, 0x4E, 0x49, 0xE7, 0x08, 0x09, 0xED,
0x76, 0xBB, 0xDD, 0x2A, 0xAB, 0xAC, 0x55, 0x92, 0x90, 0xD0,
0x6E, 0xB7, 0xDB, 0xAD, 0xB2, 0xCA, 0x5A, 0x25, 0xF9, 0xF8,
0xF0, 0xC6, 0x47, 0x48, 0x28, 0x95, 0x54, 0x52, 0x49, 0x25,
```

The bitmap for the ARDUBOY logo in `drawBitmap()` format.

See also

- bootLogo()
- drawBitmap()

Definition at line 1472 of file Arduboy2.h.
The bitmap for the ARDUBOY logo in `drawCompressed()` format.

See also

- `bootLogoCompressed()`
- `drawCompressed()`

Definition at line 1479 of file Arduboy2.h.

### 6.3.3.3 arduboy_logo_sprite

```cpp
const PROGMEM uint8_t Arduboy2Base::arduboy_logo_sprite [static]
Initial value:
{
  88, 16,
  0xF0, 0xF8, 0x9C, 0x8E, 0x87, 0x83, 0x87, 0x8E, 0x9C, 0xF8,
  0xF0, 0x00, 0x00, 0xFE, 0xFF, 0x03, 0x03, 0x03, 0x03, 0x03,
  0x07, 0x0E, 0xFC, 0xF8, 0x00, 0x00, 0xFE, 0xFF, 0x03, 0x03,
  0x03, 0x03, 0x03, 0x07, 0x0E, 0xFC, 0xF8, 0x00, 0x00, 0xFF,
  0x00, 0x00, 0xFF, 0x00, 0x00, 0x00, 0x00, 0x00, 0x00, 0x00,
  0x00, 0x00, 0x00, 0x00, 0x00, 0x00, 0x00, 0xFF, 0xFF,
  0x01, 0x01, 0x01, 0x01, 0x01, 0x01, 0x01, 0xFF, 0xFF,
  0x00, 0x00, 0xFF, 0xFF, 0x03, 0x03, 0x03, 0x03, 0x03, 0x07,
  0x0E, 0xFC, 0xF8, 0x00, 0x00, 0x00, 0x00, 0x00, 0x00, 0x00,
  0x00, 0x00, 0xFF, 0xFF, 0xFF, 0xFF, 0xFF, 0xFF, 0xFF, 0xFF,
}
```

The bitmap for the ARDUBOY logo in `Sprites` class `drawSelfMasked()` or `drawOverwrite()` format.

See also

- `bootLogoSpritesSelfMasked()`
- `bootLogoSpritesOverwrite()`
- `bootLogoSpritesBSelfMasked()`
- `bootLogoSpritesBOverwrite()`

Definition at line 1488 of file Arduboy2.h.

### 6.3.3.4 audio

```cpp
Arduboy2Audio Arduboy2Base::audio [static]
An object created to provide audio control functions within this class.
This object is created to eliminate the need for a sketch to create an `Arduboy2Audio` class object itself.
See also

- `Arduboy2Audio`

Definition at line 227 of file Arduboy2.h.

### 6.3.3.5 currentButtonState

```cpp
uint8_t Arduboy2Base::currentButtonState = 0 [static]
Used by `pollButtons()` to hold the current button state.
Holds the last button state read by the `pollButtons()` function.
A sketch normally does not need to read or manipulate this variable and just lets `pollButtons()` handle it.
Access to it is provided for special circumstances. See `previousButtonState` for further discussion.
```
6.3.3.6  frameCount

uint16_t Arduboy2Base::frameCount = 0 [static]
A counter which is incremented once per frame.
This counter is incremented once per frame when using the `nextFrame()` function. It will wrap to zero when it reaches its maximum value.
It could be used to have an event occur for a given number of frames, or a given number of frames later, in a way that wouldn't be quantized the way that using `everyXFrames()` might.

example:
```c
// move for 10 frames when right button is pressed, if not already moving
if (!moving) {
    if (arduboy.justPressed(RIGHT_BUTTON)) {
        endMoving = arduboy.frameCount + 10;
        moving = true;
    }
} else {
    movePlayer();
    if (arduboy.frameCount == endMoving) {
        moving = false;
    }
}
```
This counter could also be used to determine the number of frames that have elapsed between events but the possibility of the counter wrapping would have to be accounted for.

See also
`nextFrame() everyXFrames()`

Definition at line 1381 of file Arduboy2.h.

6.3.3.7  previousButtonState

uint8_t Arduboy2Base::previousButtonState = 0 [static]
Used by `pollButtons()` to hold the previous button state.
Holds the button state saved by the `pollButtons()` function from the previous to last call to it.
A sketch normally does not need to read or manipulate this variable and just lets `pollButtons()` handle it. Access to it is provided for special circumstances.
For example, the time between calls to `pollButtons()` must be long enough to allow sufficient time to "de-bounce" the buttons. `pollButtons()` is normally called once every frame but at a high frame rate the time between frames may be too short for this. Calling `pollButtons()` every 2nd frame could provide a long enough time but then a call to `justPressed()` in each frame would make it look like a button was pressed twice. To remedy this, after `justPressed()` detects a press, `previousButtonState` could be modified to acknowledge the button press.

```c
void setup() {
    arduboy.begin();
    arduboy.setFrameRate(120); // too fast for button debounce
}
void loop() {
    if (!arduboy.nextFrame()) {
        return;
    }
    if (arduboy.everyXFrames(2)) { // only poll every 2nd frame
        arduboy.pollButtons(); // to slow down poll frequency
    }
    if (justPressedOnce(A_BUTTON)) {
        // handle button press as normal...
    }
    // remainder of loop() code...
}
bool justPressedOnce(uint8_t button) {
    bool pressed = arduboy.justPressed(button);
    if (pressed) {
        arduboy.previousButtonState |= button; // set state as pressed
    }
}
```
```cpp
return pressed;
}

See also

currentButtonState pollButtons() justPressed() justReleased()
```

Definition at line 1451 of file Arduboy2.h.

### 6.3.3.8 sBuffer

```cpp
tuint8_t Arduboy2Base::sBuffer [static]
```

The display buffer array in RAM.
The display buffer (also known as the screen buffer) contains an image bitmap of the desired contents of the display, which is written to the display using the `display()` function. The drawing functions of this library manipulate the contents of the display buffer. A sketch can also access the display buffer directly.

See also

```cpp
getBuffer()
```

Definition at line 1465 of file Arduboy2.h.
The documentation for this class was generated from the following files:

- Arduboy2.h
- Arduboy2.cpp
- Arduboy2Data.cpp

### 6.4 Arduboy2Core Class Reference

Lower level functions generally dealing directly with the hardware.

```cpp
#include <Arduboy2Core.h>
```

Inheritance diagram for Arduboy2Core:

```
Arduboy2Core
Arduboy2Base
Arduboy2
```

**Static Public Member Functions**

- static void `idle ()`
  
  *Idle the CPU to save power.*

- static void `LCDDataMode ()`
  
  *Put the display into data mode.*

Generated on Tue Sep 29 2020 14:29:54 for Arduboy2 Library by Doxygen
• static void LCDCommandMode ()
  Put the display into command mode.
• static void SPItransfer (uint8_t data)
  Transfer a byte to the display.
• static uint8_t SPItransferAndRead (uint8_t data)
  Transfer a byte to, and read a byte from, the SPI bus.
• static void displayOff ()
  Turn the display off.
• static void displayOn ()
  Turn the display on.
• static constexpr uint8_t width ()
  Get the width of the display in pixels.
• static constexpr uint8_t height ()
  Get the height of the display in pixels.
• static uint8_t buttonsState ()
  Get the current state of all buttons as a bitmask.
• static void paint8Pixels (uint8_t pixels)
  Paint 8 pixels vertically to the display.
• static void paintScreen (const uint8_t ∗image)
  Paints an entire image directly to the display from program memory.
• static void paintScreen (uint8_t image[], bool clear=false)
  Paints an entire image directly to the display from an array in RAM.
• static void blank ()
  Blank the display screen by setting all pixels off.
• static void invert (bool inverse)
  Invert the entire display or set it back to normal.
• static void allPixelsOn (bool on)
  Turn all display pixels on or display the buffer contents.
• static void flipVertical (bool flipped)
  Flip the display vertically or set it back to normal.
• static void flipHorizontal (bool flipped)
  Flip the display horizontally or set it back to normal.
• static void sendLCDCommand (uint8_t command)
  Send a single command byte to the display.
• static void setRGBled (uint8_t red, uint8_t green, uint8_t blue)
  Set the light output of the RGB LED.
• static void setRGBled (uint8_t color, uint8_t val)
  Set the brightness of one of the RGB LEDs without affecting the others.
• static void freeRGBled ()
  Relinquish analog control of the RGB LED.
• static void digitalWriteRGB (uint8_t red, uint8_t green, uint8_t blue)
  Set the RGB LEDs digitally, to either fully on or fully off.
• static void digitalWriteRGB (uint8_t color, uint8_t val)
  Set one of the RGB LEDs digitally, to either fully on or fully off.
• static void boot ()
  Initialize the Arduboy’s hardware.
• static void safeMode ()
  Allow upload when the bootloader "magic number" could be corrupted.
• static unsigned long generateRandomSeed ()
  Create a seed suitable for use with a pseudorandom number generator.
• static void delayShort (uint16_t ms) __attribute__((noinline))
  Delay for the number of milliseconds, specified as a 16 bit value.
• static void exitToBootloader ()
  Exit the sketch and start the bootloader.
6.4 Arduboy2Core Class Reference

6.4.1 Detailed Description

Lower level functions generally dealing directly with the hardware. This class is inherited by Arduboy2Base and thus also Arduboy2, so wouldn't normally be used directly by a sketch.

Note

A friend class named Arduboy2Ex is declared by this class. The intention is to allow a sketch to create an Arduboy2Ex class which would have access to the private and protected members of the Arduboy2Core class. It is hoped that this may eliminate the need to create an entire local copy of the library, in order to extend the functionality, in most circumstances.

Definition at line 335 of file Arduboy2Core.h.

6.4.2 Member Function Documentation

6.4.2.1 allPixelsOn()

void Arduboy2Core::allPixelsOn ( bool on ) [static]

Turn all display pixels on or display the buffer contents.

Parameters

| on | true turns all pixels on. false displays the contents of the hardware display buffer. |

Calling this function with a value of true will override the contents of the hardware display buffer and turn all pixels on. The contents of the hardware buffer will remain unchanged.

Calling this function with a value of false will set the normal state of displaying the contents of the hardware display buffer.

Note

All pixels will be lit even if the display is in inverted mode.

See also

invert()

Definition at line 422 of file Arduboy2Core.cpp.

6.4.2.2 blank()

void Arduboy2Core::blank ( ) [static]

Blank the display screen by setting all pixels off. All pixels on the screen will be written with a value of 0 to turn them off.

Definition at line 400 of file Arduboy2Core.cpp.

6.4.2.3 boot()

void Arduboy2Core::boot ( ) [static]

Initialize the Arduboy's hardware. This function initializes the display, buttons, etc. This function is called by begin() so isn't normally called within a sketch. However, in order to free up some code space, by eliminating some of the start up features, it can be called in place of begin(). The functions that begin() would call after boot() can then be called to add back in some of the start up features as space permits.

See the README file or main page, in section Substitute or remove boot up features, for more details.
Warning

If this function is used, it is recommended that at least `flashlight()` or `safeMode()` be called after it to provide a means to upload a new sketch if the bootloader “magic number” problem is encountered.

See also

`Arduboy2::begin()` `Arduboy2Base::flashlight()` `safeMode()`

Definition at line 81 of file Arduboy2Core.cpp.

### 6.4.2.4 buttonsState()

```cpp
uint8_t Arduboy2Core::buttonsState ( ) [static]
```

Get the current state of all buttons as a bitmask.

Returns

A bitmask of the state of all the buttons.

The returned mask contains a bit for each button. For any pressed button, its bit will be 1. For released buttons their associated bits will be 0.

The following defined mask values should be used for the buttons:

- LEFT_BUTTON
- RIGHT_BUTTON
- UP_BUTTON
- DOWN_BUTTON
- A_BUTTON
- B_BUTTON

Definition at line 536 of file Arduboy2Core.cpp.

### 6.4.2.5 delayShort()

```cpp
void Arduboy2Core::delayShort ( uint16_t ms ) [static]
```

Delay for the number of milliseconds, specified as a 16 bit value.

Parameters

- `ms` The delay in milliseconds.

This function works the same as the Arduino `delay()` function except the provided value is 16 bits long, so the maximum delay allowed is 65535 milliseconds (about 65.5 seconds). Using this function instead of Arduino `delay()` will save a few bytes of code.

Definition at line 582 of file Arduboy2Core.cpp.

### 6.4.2.6 digitalWriteRGB() [1/2]

```cpp
void Arduboy2Core::digitalWriteRGB ( uint8_t color, uint8_t val ) [static]
```

Set one of the RGB LEDs digitally, to either fully on or fully off.

Parameters

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>color</th>
<th>The name of the LED to set. The value given should be one of RED_LED, GREEN_LED or BLUE_LED.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>val</td>
<td>Indicates whether to turn the specified LED on or off. The value given should be RGB_ON or RGB_OFF.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

This 2 parameter version of the function will set a single LED within the RGB LED either fully on or fully off. See the description of the 3 parameter version of this function for more details on the RGB LED.
void Arduboy2Core::digitalWriteRGB (  
uint8_t red,  
uint8_t green,  
uint8_t blue )  [static]  

Set the RGB LEDs digitally, to either fully on or fully off.

Parameters

red,green,blue Use value RGB_ON or RGB_OFF to set each LED.

The RGB LED is actually individual red, green and blue LEDs placed very close together in a single package. This 3 parameter version of the function will set each LED either on or off, to set the RGB LED to 7 different colors at their highest brightness or turn it off.

The colors are as follows:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>RED LED</th>
<th>GREEN LED</th>
<th>BLUE LED</th>
<th>COLOR</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>RGB_OFF</td>
<td>RGB_OFF</td>
<td>RGB_OFF</td>
<td>OFF</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>RGB_OFF</td>
<td>RGB_OFF</td>
<td>RGB_ON</td>
<td>Blue</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>RGB_OFF</td>
<td>RGB_ON</td>
<td>RGB_OFF</td>
<td>Green</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>RGB_OFF</td>
<td>RGB_ON</td>
<td>RGB_ON</td>
<td>Cyan</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>RGB_ON</td>
<td>RGB_OFF</td>
<td>RGB_OFF</td>
<td>Red</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>RGB_ON</td>
<td>RGB_OFF</td>
<td>RGB_ON</td>
<td>Magenta</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>RGB_ON</td>
<td>RGB_ON</td>
<td>RGB_ON</td>
<td>White</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Note

Using the RGB LED in analog mode will prevent digital control of the LED. To restore the ability to control the LED digitally, use the freeRGBled() function.

Note

Many of the Kickstarter Arduboy units were accidentally shipped with the RGB LED installed incorrectly. For these units, the green LED cannot be lit. As long as the green led is set to off, turning on the red LED will actually light the blue LED and turning on the blue LED will actually light the red LED. If the green LED is turned on, none of the LEDs will light.

See also

digitalWriteRGB(uint8_t, uint8_t, uint8_t) setRGBled() freeRGBled()
**6.4.2.9 displayOn()**

`void Arduboy2Core::displayOn ( ) [static]`

Turn the display on.
Used to power up and reinitialize the display after calling `displayOff()`.

**Note**

The previous call to `displayOff()` will have caused the display's buffer contents to be lost. The display will have to be re-painted, which is usually done by calling `display()`.

**See also**

- `displayOff()`

Definition at line 306 of file Arduboy2Core.cpp.

**6.4.10 exitToBootloader()**

`void Arduboy2Core::exitToBootloader ( ) [static]`

Exit the sketch and start the bootloader.
The sketch will exit and the bootloader will be started in command mode. The effect will be similar to pressing the reset button.
This function is intended to be used to allow uploading a new sketch, when the USB code has been removed to gain more code space. Ideally, the sketch would present a "New Sketch Upload" menu or prompt telling the user to "Press and hold the DOWN button when the procedure to upload a new sketch has been initiated". The sketch would then wait for the DOWN button to be pressed and then call this function.

**See also**

- `ARDUBOY_NO_USB`

Definition at line 587 of file Arduboy2Core.cpp.

**6.4.11 flipHorizontal()**

`void Arduboy2Core::flipHorizontal ( ) [static]`

Flip the display horizontally or set it back to normal.

**Parameters**

`flipped`  
*true* will set horizontal flip mode. *false* will set normal horizontal orientation.

Calling this function with a value of *true* will cause the X coordinate to start at the left edge of the display instead of the right, effectively flipping the display horizontally.
Once in horizontal flip mode, it will remain this way until normal horizontal mode is set by calling this function with a value of *false*.

**See also**

- `flipVertical()`

Definition at line 434 of file Arduboy2Core.cpp.
### 6.4.2.12 flipVertical()

```cpp
void Arduboy2Core::flipVertical (  
    bool flipped ) [static]
```

Flip the display vertically or set it back to normal.

**Parameters**

| flipped | true will set vertical flip mode. false will set normal vertical orientation. |

Calling this function with a value of true will cause the Y coordinate to start at the bottom edge of the display instead of the top, effectively flipping the display vertically.

Once in vertical flip mode, it will remain this way until normal vertical mode is set by calling this function with a value of false.

See also

- flipHorizontal()

Definition at line 428 of file Arduboy2Core.cpp.

### 6.4.2.13 freeRGBled()

```cpp
void Arduboy2Core::freeRGBled ( ) [static]
```

Relinquish analog control of the RGB LED.

Using the RGB LED in analog mode prevents further use of the LED in digital mode. This function will restore the pins used for the LED, so it can be used in digital mode.

See also

- digitalWriteRGB() setRGBled()

Definition at line 487 of file Arduboy2Core.cpp.

### 6.4.2.14 generateRandomSeed()

```cpp
unsigned long Arduboy2Core::generateRandomSeed ( ) [static]
```

Create a seed suitable for use with a pseudorandom number generator.

**Returns**

A random value that can be used to seed a pseudorandom number generator.

The returned value will be a random value derived from entropy from an ADC reading of a floating pin combined with the microseconds since boot.

**Note**

This function will be more effective if called after a semi-random time, such as after waiting for the user to press a button to start a game, or another event that takes a variable amount of time after boot.

See also

- Arduboy2Base::initRandomSeed()

Definition at line 564 of file Arduboy2Core.cpp.
6.4.2.15  height()

static constexpr uint8_t Arduboy2Core::height ( ) [inline], [static], [constexpr]
Get the height of the display in pixels.

Returns
The height of the display in pixels.

Definition at line 471 of file Arduboy2Core.h.

6.4.2.16  idle()

void Arduboy2Core::idle ( ) [static]
Idle the CPU to save power.
This puts the CPU in idle sleep mode. You should call this as often as you can for the best power savings. The timer 0 overflow interrupt will wake up the chip every 1ms, so even at 60 FPS a well written app should be able to sleep maybe half the time in between rendering it's own frames.

Definition at line 278 of file Arduboy2Core.cpp.

6.4.2.17  invert()

void Arduboy2Core::invert ( bool inverse ) [static]
Invert the entire display or set it back to normal.

Parameters
inverse  true will invert the display. false will set the display to no-inverted.

Calling this function with a value of true will set the display to inverted mode. A pixel with a value of 0 will be on and a pixel set to 1 will be off.
Once in inverted mode, the display will remain this way until it is set back to non-inverted mode by calling this function with false.

Definition at line 415 of file Arduboy2Core.cpp.

6.4.2.18  LCDCommandMode()

void Arduboy2Core::LCDCommandMode ( ) [static]
Put the display into command mode.
When placed in command mode, data that is sent to the display will be treated as commands.
See the SSD1306 controller and OLED display documents for available commands and command sequences.

Links:

Note
This is a low level function that is not intended for general use in a sketch. It has been made public and documented for use by derived classes.

See also
- LCDDataMode() sendLCDCommand() SPItransfer()

Definition at line 225 of file Arduboy2Core.cpp.
6.4.2.19  LCDDataMode()

void Arduboy2Core::LCDDataMode ( ) [static]

Put the display into data mode.
When placed in data mode, data that is sent to the display will be considered as data to be displayed.

Note
This is a low level function that is not intended for general use in a sketch. It has been made public and
documented for use by derived classes.

See also

LCDCommandMode() SPItransfer()

Definition at line 220 of file Arduboy2Core.cpp.

6.4.2.20  paint8Pixels()

void Arduboy2Core::paint8Pixels ( 
    uint8_t pixels ) [static]

Paint 8 pixels vertically to the display.

Parameters

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>pixels</th>
<th>A byte whose bits specify a vertical column of 8 pixels.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

A byte representing a vertical column of 8 pixels is written to the display at the current page and column address. The address is then incremented. The page/column address will wrap to the start of the display (the top left) when it increments past the end (lower right).

The least significant bit represents the top pixel in the column. A bit set to 1 is lit, 0 is unlit.

Example:

X = lit pixels, . = unlit pixels

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>blank()</th>
<th>paint8Pixels() 0xFF, 0, 0xF0, 0, 0x0F</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>v TOP LEFT corner (8x9)</td>
<td>v TOP LEFT corner</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>. . . . . . (page 1)</td>
<td>X . . . X . . . (page 1)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>. . . . . .</td>
<td>X . . . X . . .</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>. . . . . .</td>
<td>X . . . X . . .</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>. . . . . .</td>
<td>X . . . X . . .</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>. . . . . . (end of page 1)</td>
<td>X . X . . . . (end of page 1)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>. . . . . . (page 2)</td>
<td>. . . . . . (page 2)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Definition at line 314 of file Arduboy2Core.cpp.

6.4.2.21  paintScreen() [1/2]

void Arduboy2Core::paintScreen ( 
    const uint8_t * image ) [static]

Paints an entire image directly to the display from program memory.

Parameters

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>image</th>
<th>A byte array in program memory representing the entire contents of the display.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

The contents of the specified array in program memory is written to the display. Each byte in the array represents
a vertical column of 8 pixels with the least significant bit at the top. The bytes are written starting at the top left,
progressing horizontally and wrapping at the end of each row, to the bottom right. The size of the array must exactly match the number of pixels in the entire display.

See also

paint8Pixels()

Definition at line 319 of file Arduboy2Core.cpp.

6.4.2.22 paintScreen() [2/2]

```cpp
void Arduboy2Core::paintScreen (  
   uint8_t image[],  
   bool clear = false ) [static]
```

Paints an entire image directly to the display from an array in RAM.

Parameters

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>image</th>
<th>A byte array in RAM representing the entire contents of the display.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>clear</td>
<td>If true the array in RAM will be cleared to zeros upon return from this function. If false the RAM buffer will remain unchanged. (optional; defaults to false)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The contents of the specified array in RAM is written to the display. Each byte in the array represents a vertical column of 8 pixels with the least significant bit at the top. The bytes are written starting at the top left, progressing horizontally and wrapping at the end of each row, to the bottom right. The size of the array must exactly match the number of pixels in the entire display.

If parameter clear is set to true the RAM array will be cleared to zeros after its contents are written to the display.

See also

paint8Pixels()

Definition at line 333 of file Arduboy2Core.cpp.

6.4.2.23 safeMode()

```cpp
void Arduboy2Core::safeMode ( ) [static]
```

Allow upload when the bootloader "magic number" could be corrupted.

If the UP button is held when this function is entered, the RGB LED will be lit and timer 0 will be disabled, then the sketch will remain in a tight loop. This is to address a problem with uploading a new sketch, for sketches that interfere with the bootloader "magic number". The problem occurs with certain sketches that use large amounts of RAM.

This function should be called after boot() in sketches that don't call flashlight().

It is intended to replace the flashlight() function when more program space is required. If possible, it is more desirable to use flashlight(), so that the actual flashlight feature isn't lost.

See also

Arduboy2Base::flashlight() boot()

Definition at line 259 of file Arduboy2Core.cpp.

6.4.2.24 sendLCDCommand()

```cpp
void Arduboy2Core::sendLCDCommand (  
   uint8_t command ) [static]
```

Send a single command byte to the display.
6.4 Arduboy2Core Class Reference

Parameters

| command | The command byte to send to the display. |

The display will be set to command mode then the specified command byte will be sent. The display will then be set to data mode. Multi-byte commands can be sent by calling this function multiple times.

Note

Sending improper commands to the display can place it into invalid or unexpected states, possibly even causing physical damage.

Definition at line 406 of file Arduboy2Core.cpp.

6.4.2.25 setRGBled() [1/2]

void Arduboy2Core::setRGBled ( 
  uint8_t color, 
  uint8_t val ) [static]

Set the brightness of one of the RGB LEDs without affecting the others.

Parameters

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>color</th>
<th>The name of the LED to set. The value given should be one of RED_LED, GREEN_LED or BLUE_LED.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>val</td>
<td>The brightness value for the LED, from 0 to 255.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Note

In order to use this function, the 3 parameter version must first be called at least once, in order to initialize the hardware.

This 2 parameter version of the function will set the brightness of a single LED within the RGB LED without affecting the current brightness of the other two. See the description of the 3 parameter version of this function for more details on the RGB LED.

See also

setRGBled(uint8_t, uint8_t, uint8_t) digitalWriteRGB() freeRGBled()

Definition at line 463 of file Arduboy2Core.cpp.

6.4.2.26 setRGBled() [2/2]

void Arduboy2Core::setRGBled ( 
  uint8_t red, 
  uint8_t green, 
  uint8_t blue ) [static]

Set the light output of the RGB LED.

Parameters

| red,green,blue | The brightness value for each LED. |

The RGB LED is actually individual red, green and blue LEDs placed very close together in a single package. By setting the brightness of each LED, the RGB LED can show various colors and intensities. The brightness of each LED can be set to a value from 0 (fully off) to 255 (fully on).
Note

Certain libraries that take control of the hardware timers may interfere with the ability of this function to properly control the RGB LED. ArduboyPlaytune is one such library known to do this. The `digitalWriteRGB()` function will still work properly in this case.

Note

Many of the Kickstarter Arduboy units were accidentally shipped with the RGB LED installed incorrectly. For these units, the green LED cannot be lit. As long as the green led is set to off, setting the red LED will actually control the blue LED and setting the blue LED will actually control the red LED. If the green LED is turned fully on, none of the LEDs will light.

See also

- `setRGBled(uint8_t, uint8_t)`
- `digitalWriteRGB()`
- `freeRGBled()`

Definition at line 441 of file Arduboy2Core.cpp.

### 6.4.2.27 SPItransfer()

```cpp
class Arduboy2Core:
    void SPItransfer(uint8_t data) { [static]
        // Transfer a byte to the display.
    }
```

**Parameters**

- `data` The byte to be sent to the display.

Transfer one byte to the display over the SPI port and wait for the transfer to complete. The byte will either be interpreted as a command or as data to be placed on the screen, depending on the command/data mode.

See also

- `LCDDataMode()`
- `LCDCommandMode()`
- `sendLCDCommand()`
- `SPItransferAndRead()`

Definition at line 239 of file Arduboy2Core.cpp.

### 6.4.2.28 SPItransferAndRead()

```cpp
class Arduboy2Core:
    uint8_t SPItransferAndRead(uint8_t data) { [static]
        // Transfer a byte to, and read a byte from, the SPI bus.
    }
```

**Parameters**

- `data` The byte to be sent.

Returns

The byte that was received.

This function does the same as the `SPItransfer()` function but also reads and returns the byte of data that was received during the transfer.

This function is of no use for a standard Arduboy, since only the display is connected to the SPI bus and data cannot be received from the display. It has been provided for use with homemade or expanded units that have had additional peripherals added to the SPI bus that are capable of sending data.
6.5 BeepPin1 Class Reference

See also

SPItransfer()

Definition at line 253 of file Arduboy2Core.cpp.

6.4.2.29 width()

静态 constexpr uint8_t Arduboy2Core::width() [inline], [static], [constexpr]

Get the width of the display in pixels.

Returns

The width of the display in pixels.

Definition at line 464 of file Arduboy2Core.h.

The documentation for this class was generated from the following files:

- Arduboy2Core.h
- Arduboy2Core.cpp

6.5 BeepPin1 Class Reference

Play simple square wave tones using speaker pin 1.

#include <Arduboy2Beep.h>

Static Public Member Functions

- static void begin() (Set up the hardware.)
- static void tone(uint16_t count) (Play a tone continually, until replaced by a new tone or stopped.)
- static void tone(uint16_t count, uint8_t dur) (Play a tone for a given duration.)
- static void timer() (Handle the duration that a tone plays for.)
- static void noTone() (Stop a tone that is playing.)
- static constexpr uint16_t freq(const float hz) (Convert a frequency to the required count.)

Static Public Attributes

- static uint8_t duration = 0 (The counter used by the timer() function to time the duration of a tone.)

6.5.1 Detailed Description

Play simple square wave tones using speaker pin 1.
Class **BeepPin2** provides identical functions for playing tones on speaker pin 2. Both classes can be used in the same sketch to allow playing two tones at the same time. To do this, the `begin()` and `timer()` functions of both classes must be used.

This class can be used to play square wave tones on speaker pin 1. The functions are designed to produce very small and efficient code.

A tone can be set to play for a given duration, or continuously until stopped or replaced by a new tone. No interrupts are used. A tone is generated by a hardware timer/counter directly toggling the pin, so once started, no CPU cycles are used to actually play the tone. The program continues to run while a tone is playing. However, a small amount of code is required to time and stop a tone after a given duration.

Tone frequencies can range from 15.26Hz to 1000000Hz. Although there’s no specific code to handle mute control, the **Arduboy2Audio** class will work since it has code to mute sound by setting the speaker pins to input mode and unmute by setting the pins as outputs. The **BeepPin1** class doesn’t interfere with this operation.

In order to avoid needing to use interrupts, the duration of tones is timed by calling the `timer()` function continuously at a fixed interval. The duration of a tone is given by specifying the number of times `timer()` will be called before stopping the tone.

For sketches that use `Arduboy2::nextFrame()`, or some other method to generate frames at a fixed rate, `timer()` can be called once per frame. Tone durations will then be given as the number of frames to play the tone for. For example, with a rate of 60 frames per second a duration of 30 would be used to play a tone for half a second.

The variable named `#duration` is the counter that times the duration of a tone. A sketch can determine if a tone is currently playing by testing if the `#duration` variable is non-zero (assuming it’s a timed tone, not a continuous tone).

To keep the code small and efficient, the frequency of a tone is specified by the actual count value to be loaded into the timer/counter peripheral. The frequency will be determined by the count provided and the clock rate of the timer/counter. In order to allow a tone’s frequency to be specified in hertz (cycles per second) the `freq()` helper function is provided, which converts a given frequency to the required count value.

NOTE that it is intended that `freq()` only be called with constant values. If `freq()` is called with a variable, code to perform floating point math will be included in the sketch, which will likely greatly increase the sketch’s code size unless the sketch also uses floating point math for other purposes.

The formulas for frequency/count conversion are:

\[ \text{count} = \left( \frac{1000000}{\text{frequency}} \right) - 1 \]

\[ \text{frequency} = \frac{1000000}{(\text{count} + 1)} \]

Counts must be between 0 and 65535.

All members of the class are static, so it’s not necessary to create an instance of the class in order to use it. However, creating an instance doesn’t produce any more code and it may make the source code smaller and make it easier to switch to the **BeepPin2** class if it becomes necessary.

The following is a basic example sketch, which will generate a tone when a button is pressed.

```cpp
#include <Arduboy2.h>

// There's no need to #include <Arduboy2Beep.h>
// It will be included in Arduboy2.h

Arduboy2 arduboy;  // class instance for speaker pin 1
BeepPin1 beep;  // class instance for speaker pin 2

void setup() {
    arduboy.begin();
    arduboy.setFrameRate(50);
    beep.begin();  // set up the hardware for playing tones
}

void loop() {
    if (!arduboy.nextFrame()) {
        return;
    }
    beep.timer();  // handle tone duration
    arduboy.pollButtons();
    if (arduboy.justPressed(A_BUTTON)) {
        // play a 1000Hz tone for 100 frames (2 seconds at 50 FPS)
        // beep.freq(1000) is used to convert 1000Hz to the required count
        beep.freq(1000);
        beep.tone(beep.freq(1000), 100);
    }
}
```

Generated on Tue Sep 29 2020 14:29:54 for Arduboy2 Library by Doxygen
Note

These functions, and the equivalents in class BeepPin2, will not work with a DevKit Arduboy because the speaker pins used cannot be directly controlled by a timer/counter. "Dummy" functions are provided so a sketch will compile and work properly but no sound will be produced.

See also

BeepPin2

Definition at line 120 of file Arduboy2Beep.h.

### 6.5.2 Member Function Documentation

#### 6.5.2.1 begin()

```cpp
void BeepPin1::begin ( ) [static]
```

Set up the hardware.
Prepare the hardware for playing tones. This function must be called (usually in setup()) before using any of the other functions in this class.
Definition at line 16 of file Arduboy2Beep.cpp.

#### 6.5.2.2 freq()

```cpp
static constexpr uint16_t BeepPin1::freq ( const float hz ) [inline], [static], [constexpr]
```

Convert a frequency to the required count.

**Parameters**

- `hz`: The frequency, in hertz (cycles per second), to be converted to a count.

**Returns**

The required count to be loaded into the timer/counter for the given frequency.

This helper function will convert a desired tone frequency to the closest value required by the tone() function's count parameter. The calculated count is rounded up or down to the nearest integer, if necessary.

**Example:**

beep.tone(beep.freq(440)); // play a 440Hz tone until stopped or replaced

**Note**

It is intended that freq() only be called with constant values. If freq() is called with a variable, code to perform floating point math will be included in the sketch, which will likely greatly increase the sketch's code size unless the sketch also uses floating point math for other purposes.

Definition at line 250 of file Arduboy2Beep.h.

#### 6.5.2.3 noTone()

```cpp
void BeepPin1::noTone ( ) [static]
```

Stop a tone that is playing.
If a tone is playing it will be stopped. It's safe to call this function even if a tone isn't currently playing.

See also
tone()

Definition at line 41 of file Arduboy2Beep.cpp.
6.5.2.4 timer()
void BeepPin1::timer ( ) [static]
Handle the duration that a tone plays for.
This function must be called at a constant interval, which would normally be once per frame, in order to stop a tone
after the desired tone duration has elapsed.
If the value of the duration variable is not 0, it will be decremented. When the duration variable is decre-
mented to 0, a playing tone will be stopped.
Definition at line 34 of file Arduboy2Beep.cpp.

6.5.2.5 tone() [1/2]
void BeepPin1::tone ( uint16_t count ) [static]
Play a tone continually, until replaced by a new tone or stopped.
Parameters

| count | The count to be loaded into the timer/counter to play the desired frequency. |

A tone is played indefinitely, until replaced by another tone or stopped using noTone().
The tone's frequency is determined by the specified count, which is loaded into the timer/counter that generates the
tone. A desired frequency can be converted into the required count value using the freq() function.
See also
freq() timer() noTone()
Definition at line 22 of file Arduboy2Beep.cpp.

6.5.2.6 tone() [2/2]
void BeepPin1::tone ( uint16_t count, uint8_t dur ) [static]
Play a tone for a given duration.
Parameters

| count | The count to be loaded into the timer/counter to play the desired frequency. |
| dur   | The duration of the tone, used by timer(). |

A tone is played for the specified duration, or until replaced by another tone or stopped using noTone().
The tone's frequency is determined by the specified count, which is loaded into the timer/counter that generates the
tone. A desired frequency can be converted into the required count value using the freq() function.
The duration value is the number of times the timer() function must be called before the tone is stopped.
See also
freq() timer() noTone()
Definition at line 27 of file Arduboy2Beep.cpp.

6.5.3 Member Data Documentation
6.6 BeepPin2 Class Reference

Play simple square wave tones using speaker pin 2.
#include <Arduboy2Beep.h>

Static Public Member Functions

- static void begin ()
  Set up the hardware for playing tones using speaker pin 2.
- static void tone (uint16_t count)
  Play a tone on speaker pin 2 continually, until replaced by a new tone or stopped.
- static void tone (uint16_t count, uint8_t dur)
  Play a tone on speaker pin 2 for a given duration.
- static void timer ()
  Handle the duration that a tone on speaker pin 2 plays for.
- static void noTone ()
  Stop a tone that is playing on speaker pin 2.
- static constexpr uint16_t freq (const float hz)
  Convert a frequency to the required count for speaker pin 2.

Static Public Attributes

- static uint8_t duration = 0
  The counter used by the timer() function to time the duration of a tone played on speaker pin 2.

6.6.1 Detailed Description

Play simple square wave tones using speaker pin 2.
This class contains the same functions as class BeepPin1 except they use speaker pin 2 instead of speaker pin 1.

Using BeepPin1 is more desirable, as it uses a 16 bit Timer, which can produce a greater frequency range and resolution than the 10 bit Timer used by BeepPin2. However, if the sketch also includes other sound generating code that uses speaker pin 1, BeepPin2 can be used to avoid conflict.

Tone frequencies on speaker pin 2 can range from 61.04Hz to 15625Hz using allowed counts from 3 to 1023. The formulas for frequency/count conversion are:

count=(62500/frequency)-1
frequency=62500/(count+1)

See the documentation for BeepPin1 for more details.
See also

BeepPin1

Definition at line 282 of file Arduboy2Beep.h.

### 6.6.2 Member Function Documentation

#### 6.6.2.1 begin()

```cpp
void BeepPin2::begin ( ) [static]
```

Set up the hardware for playing tones using speaker pin 2.
For details see BeepPin1::begin().
Definition at line 52 of file Arduboy2Beep.cpp.

#### 6.6.2.2 freq()

```cpp
static constexpr uint16_t BeepPin2::freq ( const float hz ) [inline], [static], [constexpr]
```

Convert a frequency to the required count for speaker pin 2.

**Parameters**

| hz | The frequency, in hertz (cycles per second), to be converted to a count. |

**Returns**

The required count to be loaded into the timer/counter for the given frequency.

For details see BeepPin1::freq().
Definition at line 355 of file Arduboy2Beep.h.

#### 6.6.2.3 noTone()

```cpp
void BeepPin2::noTone ( ) [static]
```

Stop a tone that is playing on speaker pin 2.
For details see BeepPin1::noTone().
Definition at line 81 of file Arduboy2Beep.cpp.

#### 6.6.2.4 timer()

```cpp
void BeepPin2::timer ( ) [static]
```

Handle the duration that a tone on speaker pin 2 plays for.
For details see BeepPin1::timer().
Definition at line 74 of file Arduboy2Beep.cpp.

#### 6.6.2.5 tone() [1/2]

```cpp
void BeepPin2::tone ( uint16_t count ) [static]
```

Play a tone on speaker pin 2 continually, until replaced by a new tone or stopped.

**Parameters**

| count | The count to be loaded into the timer/counter to play the desired frequency. |
6.7 Point Struct Reference

An object to define a single point for collision functions.

#include <Arduboy2.h>

Public Member Functions

- **Point ()**=default
  
  The default constructor.

- constexpr **Point (int16_t x, int16_t y)**
  
  The fully initializing constructor.

Public Attributes

- **int16_t x**

- **int16_t y**

6.7.1 Detailed Description

An object to define a single point for collision functions. The location of the point is given by X and Y coordinates.
See also

Arduboy2Base::collide(Point, Rect) Rect

Definition at line 146 of file Arduboy2.h.

### 6.7.2 Constructor & Destructor Documentation

#### 6.7.2.1 Point()

```cpp
constexpr Point::Point (
    int16_t x,
    int16_t y ) [inline], [constexpr]
```

The fully initializing constructor.

**Parameters**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>The X coordinate of the point. Copied to variable x.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>y</td>
<td>The Y coordinate of the point. Copied to variable y.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Definition at line 162 of file Arduboy2.h.

### 6.7.3 Member Data Documentation

#### 6.7.3.1 x

```cpp
int16_t Point::x
```

The X coordinate of the point

Definition at line 148 of file Arduboy2.h.

#### 6.7.3.2 y

```cpp
int16_t Point::y
```

The Y coordinate of the point

Definition at line 149 of file Arduboy2.h.

The documentation for this struct was generated from the following file:

- Arduboy2.h

### 6.8 Print Class Reference

The Arduino Print class is available for writing text to the screen buffer.

```cpp
#include <Arduboy2.h>
```
6.8.1 Detailed Description

The Arduino Print class is available for writing text to the screen buffer. For an Arduboy2 class object, functions provided by the Arduino Print class can be used to write text to the screen buffer, in the same manner as the Arduino Serial.print(), etc., functions. Print will use the write() function to actually draw each character in the screen buffer, using the library's font5x7 font. Two character values are handled specially:

- ASCII newline/line feed (\n, 0x0A, inverse white circle). This will move the text cursor position to the start of the next line, based on the current text size.
- ASCII carriage return (\r, 0x0D, musical eighth note). This character will be ignored.

To override the special handling of the above values, to allow the characters they represent to be printed, text raw mode can be selected using the setTextRawMode() function.


Example:

```cpp
int value = 42;
arduboy.println("Hello World"); // Prints "Hello World" and then sets the
// text cursor to the start of the next line
arduboy.print(value); // Prints "42"
arduboy.print(\n); // Sets the text cursor to the start of the next line
arduboy.print(78, HEX); // Prints "4E" (78 in hexadecimal)
arduboy.print(\r\n); // Prints a heart symbol and a Greek uppercase omega
arduboy.setTextRawMode(true); // Set text "raw" mode
arduboy.print(\r\n); // Prints a "musical eighth note"
// followed by an "inverse white circle"
// because we're in "raw" mode
arduboy.setTextRawMode(false); // Exit text "raw" mode
```

See also

Arduboy2::setTextSize()  Arduboy2::setTextColor()  Arduboy2::setTextBackground()  Arduboy2::setTextWrap()  Arduboy2::setTextRawMode()  Arduboy2::write()  Arduboy2::font5x7

The documentation for this class was generated from the following file:

- Arduboy2.h
The default constructor.

- constexpr Rect (int16_t x, int16_t y, uint8_t width, uint8_t height)

The fully initializing constructor.

Public Attributes

- int16_t x
- int16_t y
- uint8_t width
- uint8_t height

6.9.1 Detailed Description

A rectangle object for collision functions.
The X and Y coordinates specify the top left corner of a rectangle with the given width and height.

See also

 Arduboy2Base::collide(Point, Rect) Arduboy2Base::collide(Rect, Rect) Point

Definition at line 108 of file Arduboy2.h.

6.9.2 Constructor & Destructor Documentation

6.9.2.1 Rect()

constexpr Rect::Rect ( 
    int16_t x, 
    int16_t y, 
    uint8_t width, 
    uint8_t height ) [inline], [constexpr]

The fully initializing constructor.

Parameters

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Parameter</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>x</td>
<td>The X coordinate of the top left corner. Copied to variable x.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>y</td>
<td>The Y coordinate of the top left corner. Copied to variable y.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>width</td>
<td>The width of the rectangle. Copied to variable width.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>height</td>
<td>The height of the rectangle. Copied to variable height.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Definition at line 128 of file Arduboy2.h.

6.9.3 Member Data Documentation

6.9.3.1 height

uint8_t Rect::height

The height of the rectangle

Definition at line 113 of file Arduboy2.h.

6.9.3.2 width

uint8_t Rect::width
The width of the rectangle
Definition at line 112 of file Arduboy2.h.

6.9.3.3 x
int16_t Rect::x
The X coordinate of the top left corner
Definition at line 110 of file Arduboy2.h.

6.9.3.4 y
int16_t Rect::y
The Y coordinate of the top left corner
Definition at line 111 of file Arduboy2.h.

The documentation for this struct was generated from the following file:
- Arduboy2.h

6.10 Sprites Class Reference
A class for drawing animated sprites from image and mask bitmaps.
#include <Sprites.h>

Static Public Member Functions
- static void drawExternalMask (int16_t x, int16_t y, const uint8_t *bitmap, const uint8_t *mask, uint8_t frame, uint8_t mask_frame)
  Draw a sprite using a separate image and mask array.
- static void drawPlusMask (int16_t x, int16_t y, const uint8_t *bitmap, uint8_t frame)
  Draw a sprite using an array containing both image and mask values.
- static void drawOverwrite (int16_t x, int16_t y, const uint8_t *bitmap, uint8_t frame)
  Draw a sprite by replacing the existing content completely.
- static void drawErase (int16_t x, int16_t y, const uint8_t *bitmap, uint8_t frame)
  "Erase" a sprite.
- static void drawSelfMasked (int16_t x, int16_t y, const uint8_t *bitmap, uint8_t frame)
  Draw a sprite using only the bits set to 1.

6.10.1 Detailed Description
A class for drawing animated sprites from image and mask bitmaps.
The functions in this class will draw to the screen buffer an image contained in an array located in program memory.
A mask can also be specified or implied, which dictates how existing pixels in the buffer, within the image boundaries,
will be affected.
A sprite or mask array contains one or more "frames". Each frame is intended to show whatever the sprite represents
in a different position, such as the various poses for a running or jumping character. By specifying a different frame
each time the sprite is drawn, it can be animated.
Each image array begins with values for the width and height of the sprite, in pixels. The width can be any value.
The height must be a multiple of 8 pixels, but with proper masking, a sprite of any height can be created.
For a separate mask array, as is used with drawExternalMask(), the width and height are not included but
must contain data of the same dimensions as the corresponding image array.
Following the width and height values for an image array, or from the beginning of a separate mask array, the array
contains the image and/or mask data for each frame. Each byte represents a vertical column of 8 pixels with the
least significant bit (bit 0) at the top. The bytes are drawn as 8 pixel high rows from left to right, top to bottom. When
the end of a row is reached, as specified by the width value, the next byte in the array will be the start of the next row.
Data for each frame after the first one immediately follows the previous frame. Frame numbers start at 0.
A separate `SpritesB` class is available as an alternative to this class. The only difference is that the `SpritesB` class is optimized for small code size rather than for execution speed. One or the other can be used depending on whether size or speed is more important.

Even if the speed is acceptable when using `SpritesB`, you should still try using `Sprites`. In some cases `Sprites` will produce less code than `SpritesB`, notably when only one of the functions is used.

You can easily switch between using the `Sprites` class or the `SpritesB` class by using one or the other to create an object instance:

```
Sprites sprites; // Use this to optimize for execution speed
SpritesB sprites; // Use this to (likely) optimize for code size
```

In the example patterns given in each `Sprites` function description, a `#` character represents a bit set to 1 and a `-` character represents a bit set to 0.

See also

`SpritesB`

Definition at line 75 of file Sprites.h.

### 6.10.2 Member Function Documentation

#### 6.10.2.1 drawErase()

```cpp
void Sprites::drawErase (  
  int16_t x,  
  int16_t y,  
  const uint8_t * bitmap,  
  uint8_t frame ) [static]
```

"Erase" a sprite.

**Parameters**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>x,y</th>
<th>The coordinates of the top left pixel location.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>bitmap</td>
<td>A pointer to the array containing the image frames.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>frame</td>
<td>The frame number of the image to erase.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The data from the specified frame in the array is used to erase a sprite. To "erase" a sprite, bits set to 1 in the frame will set the corresponding pixel in the buffer to 0. Frame bits set to 0 will remain unchanged in the buffer.

```
image before after (# = 1, - = 0)
----- ----- -----  
----- ----- -----  
--#-- ----- -----  
##-## ----- -----  
--#-- ----- -----  
----- ----- -----  
```

```
image before after
----- ----- -----  
----- ----- -----  
----- ----- -----  
--#-- ----- -----  
##-## ----- -----  
--#-- ----- -----  
----- ----- -----  
```

Definition at line 20 of file Sprites.cpp.
6.10.2.2 drawExternalMask()

```cpp
void Sprites::drawExternalMask (
    int16_t x,
    int16_t y,
    const uint8_t * bitmap,
    const uint8_t * mask,
    uint8_t frame,
    uint8_t mask_frame ) [static]
```

Draw a sprite using a separate image and mask array.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Parameters</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>x, y</td>
<td>The coordinates of the top left pixel location.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bitmap</td>
<td>A pointer to the array containing the image frames.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mask</td>
<td>A pointer to the array containing the mask frames.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>frame</td>
<td>The frame number of the image to draw.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mask_frame</td>
<td>The frame number for the mask to use (can be different from the image frame number).</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

An array containing the image frames, and another array containing corresponding mask frames, are used to draw a sprite.

For the mask array, the width and height are not included but must contain data of the same dimensions as the corresponding image array.

Bits set to 1 in the mask indicate that the pixel will be set to the value of the corresponding image bit. Bits set to 0 in the mask will be left unchanged.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>image mask before after (# = 1, - = 0)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>----- -###- ----- -----</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>--##- ##### ----- --#--</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>###-## ###- ----- #--##-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>------ ###- ---- -----</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>image mask before after</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>----- -###- #---#-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>--##- ##### ##### --#--</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>###-## ##### ##### ##-##</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>--##- ###- ----- --##-</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Definition at line 9 of file Sprites.cpp.

6.10.2.3 drawOverwrite()

```cpp
void Sprites::drawOverwrite (  
    int16_t x,
    int16_t y,
    const uint8_t * bitmap,
    uint8_t frame ) [static]
```

Draw a sprite by replacing the existing content completely.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Parameters</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>x, y</td>
<td>The coordinates of the top left pixel location.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bitmap</td>
<td>A pointer to the array containing the image frames.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>frame</td>
<td>The frame number of the image to draw.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

A sprite is drawn by overwriting the pixels in the buffer with the data from the specified frame in the array. No masking is done. A bit set to 1 in the frame will set the pixel to 1 in the buffer, and a 0 in the array will set a 0 in the
class Documentation

6.10.2.4 drawPlusMask()

```cpp
void Sprites::drawPlusMask (
    int16_t x,
    int16_t y,
    const uint8_t ∗bitmap,
    uint8_t ∗frame ) [static]
```

Draw a sprite using an array containing both image and mask values.

**Parameters**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Parameter</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><code>x, y</code></td>
<td>The coordinates of the top left pixel location.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>bitmap</code></td>
<td>A pointer to the array containing the image/mask frames.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>frame</code></td>
<td>The frame number of the image to draw.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

An array containing combined image and mask data is used to draw a sprite. Bytes are given in pairs with the first byte representing the image pixels and the second byte specifying the corresponding mask. The width given in the array still specifies the image width, so each row of image and mask bytes will be twice the width value. Bits set to 1 in the mask indicate that the pixel will be set to the value of the corresponding image bit. Bits set to 0 in the mask will be left unchanged.

```plaintext
image mask before after (# = 1, - = 0)
----- ----- ----- ----- ----- ----- ----- ----- ----- ----- ----- ----- ----- ----- ----- ----- ------
------- ------- ------- ------- ------- ------- ------- ------- ------- ------- ------- ------- ------- ------- ------- ------
------- ------- ------- ------- ------- ------- ------- ------- ------- ------- ------- ------- ------- ------- ------- ------
------- ------- ------- ------- ------- ------- ------- ------- ------- ------- ------- ------- ------- ------- ------- ------
------- ------- ------- ------- ------- ------- ------- ------- ------- ------- ------- ------- ------- ------- ------- ------
```

Definition at line 30 of file Sprites.cpp.

6.10.2.5 drawSelfMasked()

```cpp
void Sprites::drawSelfMasked (
    int16_t x,
    int16_t y,
    const uint8_t ∗bitmap,
    uint8_t ∗frame ) [static]
```

Definition at line 15 of file Sprites.cpp.
const uint8_t * bitmap,
uint8_t frame ) [static]

Draw a sprite using only the bits set to 1.

Parameters

| x, y | The coordinates of the top left pixel location. |
| bitmap | A pointer to the array containing the image frames. |
| frame | The frame number of the image to draw. |

Bits set to 1 in the frame will be used to draw the sprite by setting the corresponding pixel in the buffer to 1. Bits set to 0 in the frame will remain unchanged in the buffer.

image before after ( # = 1, - = 0)

----- ----- ----- -----
---#--- ---#- ---#--
##-## -##--- ##-## ---#--
----- ----- ----- -----

image before after

----- ##### ##### (no change because all pixels were already white)
---#-- ##### #####
##-## ###### #####
---#-- ###### #####
----- ###### #####

Definition at line 25 of file Sprites.cpp.

The documentation for this class was generated from the following files:

- Sprites.h
- Sprites.cpp

6.11 SpritesB Class Reference

A class for drawing animated sprites from image and mask bitmaps. Optimized for small code size.

#include <SpritesB.h>

Static Public Member Functions

- static void drawExternalMask (int16_t x, int16_t y, const uint8_t * bitmap, const uint8_t * mask, uint8_t frame, uint8_t mask_frame)

  Draw a sprite using a separate image and mask array.

- static void drawPlusMask (int16_t x, int16_t y, const uint8_t * bitmap, uint8_t frame)

  Draw a sprite using an array containing both image and mask values.

- static void drawOverwrite (int16_t x, int16_t y, const uint8_t * bitmap, uint8_t frame)

  Draw a sprite by replacing the existing content completely.

- static void drawErase (int16_t x, int16_t y, const uint8_t * bitmap, uint8_t frame)

  “Erase” a sprite.

- static void drawSelfMasked (int16_t x, int16_t y, const uint8_t * bitmap, uint8_t frame)

  Draw a sprite using only the bits set to 1.

6.11.1 Detailed Description

A class for drawing animated sprites from image and mask bitmaps. Optimized for small code size.

The functions in this class are identical to the Sprites class. The only difference is that the functions in this class are optimized for smaller code size rather than execution speed.

See the Sprites class documentation for details on the use of the functions in this class.
Even if the speed is acceptable when using `SpritesB`, you should still try using `Sprites`. In some cases `Sprites` will produce less code than `SpritesB`, notably when only one of the functions is used. You can easily switch between using the `Sprites` class or the `SpritesB` class by using one or the other to create an object instance:

```cpp
Sprites sprites; // Use this to optimize for execution speed
SpritesB sprites; // Use this to (likely) optimize for code size
```

See also

`Sprites`

Definition at line 40 of file SpritesB.h.

### 6.11.2 Member Function Documentation

#### 6.11.2.1 drawErase()

```cpp
void SpritesB::drawErase (  
    int16_t x,  
    int16_t y,  
    const uint8_t * bitmap,  
    uint8_t _frame ) [static]
```

"Erase" a sprite.

**Parameters**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Parameter</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><code>x, y</code></td>
<td>The coordinates of the top left pixel location.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>bitmap</code></td>
<td>A pointer to the array containing the image frames.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>frame</code></td>
<td>The frame number of the image to erase.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

See also

`Sprites::drawErase()`

Definition at line 21 of file SpritesB.cpp.

#### 6.11.2.2 drawExternalMask()

```cpp
void SpritesB::drawExternalMask (  
    int16_t x,  
    int16_t y,  
    const uint8_t * bitmap,  
    const uint8_t * mask,  
    uint8_t _frame,  
    uint8_t mask_frame ) [static]
```

Draw a sprite using a separate image and mask array.

**Parameters**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Parameter</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><code>x, y</code></td>
<td>The coordinates of the top left pixel location.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>bitmap</code></td>
<td>A pointer to the array containing the image frames.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>mask</code></td>
<td>A pointer to the array containing the mask frames.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>frame</code></td>
<td>The frame number of the image to draw.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>mask_frame</code></td>
<td>The frame number for the mask to use (can be different from the image frame number).</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
See also

Sprites::drawExternalMask()

Definition at line 10 of file SpritesB.cpp.

6.11.2.3 drawOverwrite()

```cpp
void SpritesB::drawOverwrite ( int16_t x, int16_t y, const uint8_t * bitmap, uint8_t frame ) [static]
```

Draw a sprite by replacing the existing content completely.

Parameters

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>x,y</th>
<th>The coordinates of the top left pixel location.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>bitmap</td>
<td>A pointer to the array containing the image frames.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>frame</td>
<td>The frame number of the image to draw.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

See also

Sprites::drawOverwrite()

Definition at line 16 of file SpritesB.cpp.

6.11.2.4 drawPlusMask()

```cpp
void SpritesB::drawPlusMask ( int16_t x, int16_t y, const uint8_t * bitmap, uint8_t frame ) [static]
```

Draw a sprite using an array containing both image and mask values.

Parameters

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>x,y</th>
<th>The coordinates of the top left pixel location.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>bitmap</td>
<td>A pointer to the array containing the image/mask frames.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>frame</td>
<td>The frame number of the image to draw.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

See also

Sprites::drawPlusMask()

Definition at line 31 of file SpritesB.cpp.

6.11.2.5 drawSelfMasked()

```cpp
void SpritesB::drawSelfMasked ( int16_t x, int16_t y, const uint8_t * bitmap, uint8_t frame ) [static]
```

Draw a sprite using only the bits set to 1.
Parameters

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>x,y</th>
<th>The coordinates of the top left pixel location.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>bitmap</td>
<td>A pointer to the array containing the image frames.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>frame</td>
<td>The frame number of the image to draw.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

See also

Sprites::drawSelfMasked()

Definition at line 26 of file SpritesB.cpp.

The documentation for this class was generated from the following files:

- SpritesB.h
- SpritesB.cpp
Chapter 7

File Documentation

7.1 Arduboy2.cpp File Reference

The Arduboy2Base and Arduboy2 classes and support objects and definitions.

#include "Arduboy2.h"

Include dependency graph for Arduboy2.cpp:

7.1.1 Detailed Description

The Arduboy2Base and Arduboy2 classes and support objects and definitions.

7.2 Arduboy2.h File Reference

The Arduboy2Base and Arduboy2 classes and support objects and definitions.

#include <Arduino.h>
#include <EEPROM.h>
#include "Arduboy2Core.h"
#include "Arduboy2Audio.h"
#include "Arduboy2Beep.h"
#include "Sprites.h"
#include "SpritesB.h"
#include <Print.h>
Include dependency graph for Arduboy2.h:

This graph shows which files directly or indirectly include this file:

**Classes**

- **struct Rect**
  A rectangle object for collision functions.
- **struct Point**
  An object to define a single point for collision functions.
- **class Arduboy2Base**
  The main functions provided for writing sketches for the Arduboy, minus text output.
- **class Arduboy2**
  The main functions provided for writing sketches for the Arduboy, including text output.

**Macros**

- `#define ARDUBOY_LIB_VER 60000`
  Library version.
- `#define ARDUBOY_UNIT_NAME_LEN 6`
  The maximum number of characters in an unterminated unit name.
- `#define ARDUBOY_UNIT_NAME_BUFFER_SIZE (ARDUBOY_UNIT_NAME_LEN + 1)`
  The minimum number of characters required to store a null-terminated unit name.
- `#define EEPROM_STORAGE_SPACE_START 16`
  Start of EEPROM storage space for sketches.
- `#define BLACK 0`
- `#define WHITE 1`
- `#define INVERT 2`
  Color value to indicate pixels are to be inverted.
- `#define CLEAR_BUFFER true`
7.2 Arduboy2.h File Reference

7.2.1 Detailed Description

The Arduboy2Base and Arduboy2 classes and support objects and definitions.

7.2.2 Macro Definition Documentation

7.2.2.1 ARDUBOY_LIB_VER

#define ARDUBOY_LIB_VER 60000
Library version.
For a version number in the form of x.y.z the value of the define will be \((x \times 10000) + (y \times 100) + (z)\) as a decimal number. So, it will read as xxyyyzz, with no leading zeros on x.
A user program can test this value to conditionally compile based on the library version. For example:

```c
// If the library is version 2.1.0 or higher
#if ARDUBOY_LIB_VER >= 20100
    // ... code that makes use of a new feature added to V2.1.0
#endif
```
Definition at line 38 of file Arduboy2.h.

7.2.2.2 ARDUBOY_UNIT_NAME_BUFFER_SIZE

#define ARDUBOY_UNIT_NAME_BUFFER_SIZE (ARDUBOY_UNIT_NAME_LEN + 1)
The minimum number of characters required to store a null-terminated unit name.
This value should be used to specify the size of a char array large enough to store a C-style null-terminated string holding a unit name.
See also

Arduboy2Base::readUnitName() Arduboy2Base::writeUnitName() ARDUBOY_UNIT_NAME_LEN

Definition at line 66 of file Arduboy2.h.

7.2.2.3 ARDUBOY_UNIT_NAME_LEN

#define ARDUBOY_UNIT_NAME_LEN 6
The maximum number of characters in an unterminated unit name.
This value represents the maximum number of characters in a unit name NOT including the necessary null character required to store the unit name as a C-style null-terminated string. To specify the size of a char array large enough to store a null-terminated string holding a unit name, please use ARDUBOY_UNIT_NAME_BUFFER_SIZE instead.
See also

ARDUBOY_UNIT_NAME_BUFFER_SIZE

Definition at line 53 of file Arduboy2.h.

7.2.2.4 BLACK

#define BLACK 0
Color value for an unlit pixel for draw functions.
Definition at line 79 of file Arduboy2.h.

7.2.2.5 CLEAR_BUFFER

#define CLEAR_BUFFER true
Value to be passed to display() to clear the screen buffer.
Definition at line 92 of file Arduboy2.h.
7.2.2.6 EEPROM_STORAGE_SPACE_START

#define EEPROM_STORAGE_SPACE_START 16
Start of EEPROM storage space for sketches.
An area at the start of EEPROM is reserved for system use. This define specifies the first EEPROM location past
the system area. Sketches can use locations from here to the end of EEPROM space.
Definition at line 76 of file Arduboy2.h.

7.2.2.7 INVERT

#define INVERT 2
Color value to indicate pixels are to be inverted.
BLACK pixels will become WHITE and WHITE will become BLACK.

Note
Only function Arduboy2Base::drawBitmap() currently supports this value.

Definition at line 90 of file Arduboy2.h.

7.2.2.8 WHITE

#define WHITE 1
Color value for a lit pixel for draw functions.
Definition at line 80 of file Arduboy2.h.

7.3 Arduboy2Audio.cpp File Reference

The Arduboy2Audio class for speaker and sound control.
#include "Arduboy2.h"
Include dependency graph for Arduboy2Audio.cpp:

7.3.1 Detailed Description

The Arduboy2Audio class for speaker and sound control.

7.4 Arduboy2Audio.h File Reference

The Arduboy2Audio class for speaker and sound control.
#include <Arduino.h>
#include <EEPROM.h>
Include dependency graph for Arduboy2Audio.h:

This graph shows which files directly or indirectly include this file:

Classes

- class Arduboy2Audio

  Provide speaker and sound control.

7.4.1 Detailed Description

The Arduboy2Audio class for speaker and sound control.

7.5 Arduboy2Beep.cpp File Reference

Classes to generate simple square wave tones on the Arduboy speaker pins.
#include <Arduino.h>
#include "Arduboy2Beep.h"
Include dependency graph for Arduboy2Beep.cpp:

```
Arduboy2Beep.cpp
Arduino.h Arduboy2Beep.h
```

### 7.5.1 Detailed Description

Classes to generate simple square wave tones on the Arduboy speaker pins.

### 7.6 Arduboy2Beep.h File Reference

Classes to generate simple square wave tones on the Arduboy speaker pins. This graph shows which files directly or indirectly include this file:

```
Arduboy2Beep.h
Arduboy2.h Arduboy2Beep.cpp
Arduboy2.cpp Sprites.h SpritesB.h Arduboy2Audio.cpp Arduboy2Data.cpp
Sprites.cpp SpritesB.cpp
```

**Classes**

- class **BeepPin1**
  
  *Play simple square wave tones using speaker pin 1.*

- class **BeepPin2**
  
  *Play simple square wave tones using speaker pin 2.*

### 7.6.1 Detailed Description

Classes to generate simple square wave tones on the Arduboy speaker pins.

### 7.7 Arduboy2Core.cpp File Reference

The **Arduboy2Core** class for Arduboy hardware initialization and control.
#include "Arduboy2Core.h"
#include <avr/wdt.h>

Include dependency graph for Arduboy2Core.cpp:

---

### 7.7.1 Detailed Description

The **Arduboy2Core** class for Arduboy hardware initialization and control.

### 7.8 Arduboy2Core.h File Reference

The **Arduboy2Core** class for Arduboy hardware initialization and control.

#include <Arduino.h>
#include <avr/power.h>
#include <avr/sleep.h>

Include dependency graph for Arduboy2Core.h:
This graph shows which files directly or indirectly include this file:

```
Arduboy2Core.h
Arduboy2.h Arduboy2Core.cpp
Arduboy2.cpp Sprites.h SpritesB.h
Arduboy2Audio.cpp Arduboy2Data.cpp
Sprites.cpp SpritesB.cpp
```

Classes

- class **Arduboy2Core**
  
  *Lower level functions generally dealing directly with the hardware.*

Macros

- `#define RGB_ON LOW`
- `#define RGB_OFF HIGH`
- `#define RED_LED 10`
- `#define GREEN_LED 11`
- `#define BLUE_LED 9`
- `#define LEFT_BUTTON _BV(5)`
- `#define RIGHT_BUTTON _BV(6)`
- `#define UP_BUTTON _BV(7)`
- `#define DOWN_BUTTON _BV(4)`
- `#define A_BUTTON _BV(3)`
- `#define B_BUTTON _BV(2)`
- `#define PIN_SPEAKER_1 5`
- `#define PIN_SPEAKER_2 13`
- `#define WIDTH 128`
- `#define HEIGHT 64`
- `#define ARDUBOY_NO_USB`

  *Eliminate the USB stack to free up code space.*

7.8.1 Detailed Description

The **Arduboy2Core** class for Arduboy hardware initialization and control.

7.8.2 Macro Definition Documentation

7.8.2.1 A_BUTTON

```
#define A_BUTTON _BV(3)
```

*The A button value for functions requiring a bitmask*

Definition at line 72 of file Arduboy2Core.h.
### 7.8.2.2 ARDUBOY_NO_USB

```c
#define ARDUBOY_NO_USB
```

**Value:**

```c
int main() __attribute__ ((OS_main));
int main() {
    Arduboy2NoUSB::mainNoUSB();
    return 0;
}
```

Eliminate the USB stack to free up code space.

**Warning**

Removing the USB code will make it impossible for sketch uploader programs to automatically force a reset into the bootloader! This means that a user will manually have to invoke a reset in order to upload a new sketch, after one without USB has been installed. Be aware that the timing for the point that a reset must be initiated can be tricky, which could lead to some frustration on the user's part.

This macro will cause the USB code, normally included in the sketch as part of the standard Arduino environment, to be eliminated. This will free up a fair amount of program space, and some RAM space as well, at the expense of disabling all USB functionality within the sketch (except as power input).

The macro should be placed before the `setup()` function definition:

```c
#include <Arduboy2.h>
Arduboy2 arduboy;
// (Other variable declarations, etc.)
// Eliminate the USB stack
ARDUBOY_NO_USB
void setup() {
    arduboy.begin();
    // any additional setup code
}
```

As stated in the warning above, without the USB code an uploader program will be unable to automatically force a reset into the bootloader to upload a new sketch. The user will have to manually invoke a reset. In addition to eliminating the USB code, this macro will check if the DOWN button is held when the sketch first starts and, if so, will call `exitToBootloader()` to start the bootloader for uploading. This makes it easier for the user than having to press the reset button.

However, to make it even more convenient for a user to invoke the bootloader it is highly recommended that a sketch using this macro include a menu or prompt that allows the user to press the DOWN button within the sketch, which should cause `exitToBootloader()` to be called.

At a minimum, the documentation for the sketch should clearly state that a manual reset will be required, and give detailed instructions on what the user must do to upload a new sketch.

See also

`Arduboy2Core::exitToBootloader()`

Definition at line 305 of file Arduboy2Core.h.

---

### 7.8.2.3 B_BUTTON

```c
#define B_BUTTON _BV(2)
```

The B button value for functions requiring a bitmask

Definition at line 73 of file Arduboy2Core.h.

---

### 7.8.2.4 BLUE_LED

```c
#define BLUE_LED 9
```

The pin number for the blue color in the RGB LED.

Definition at line 55 of file Arduboy2Core.h.

---

### 7.8.2.5 DOWN_BUTTON

```c
#define DOWN_BUTTON _BV(4)
```

---

Generated on Tue Sep 29 2020 14:29:54 for Arduboy2 Library by Doxygen
The Down button value for functions requiring a bitmask
Definition at line 71 of file Arduboy2Core.h.

### 7.8.2.6 GREEN_LED

```c
#define GREEN_LED 11
```
The pin number for the green color in the RGB LED.
Definition at line 54 of file Arduboy2Core.h.

### 7.8.2.7 HEIGHT

```c
#define HEIGHT 64
```
The height of the display in pixels
Definition at line 244 of file Arduboy2Core.h.

### 7.8.2.8 LEFT_BUTTON

```c
#define LEFT_BUTTON _BV(5)
```
The Left button value for functions requiring a bitmask
Definition at line 68 of file Arduboy2Core.h.

### 7.8.2.9 PIN_SPEAKER_1

```c
#define PIN_SPEAKER_1 5
```
The pin number of the first lead of the speaker
Definition at line 111 of file Arduboy2Core.h.

### 7.8.2.10 PIN_SPEAKER_2

```c
#define PIN_SPEAKER_2 13
```
The pin number of the second lead of the speaker
Definition at line 112 of file Arduboy2Core.h.

### 7.8.2.11 RED_LED

```c
#define RED_LED 10
```
The pin number for the red color in the RGB LED.
Definition at line 53 of file Arduboy2Core.h.

### 7.8.2.12 RGB_OFF

```c
#define RGB_OFF HIGH
```
For digitally setting an RGB LED off using digitalWriteRGB()
Definition at line 36 of file Arduboy2Core.h.

### 7.8.2.13 RGB_ON

```c
#define RGB_ON LOW
```
For digitally setting an RGB LED on using digitalWriteRGB()
Definition at line 35 of file Arduboy2Core.h.
7.8.2.14 RIGHT_BUTTON

#define RIGHT_BUTTON _BV(6)
The Right button value for functions requiring a bitmask
Definition at line 69 of file Arduboy2Core.h.

7.8.2.15 UP_BUTTON

#define UP_BUTTON _BV(7)
The Up button value for functions requiring a bitmask
Definition at line 70 of file Arduboy2Core.h.

7.8.2.16 WIDTH

#define WIDTH 128
The width of the display in pixels
Definition at line 243 of file Arduboy2Core.h.

7.9 Arduboy2Data.cpp File Reference

Constant data definitions for the Arduboy2 and Arduboy2Base classes.
#include "Arduboy2.h"
#include <avr/pgmspace.h>
Include dependency graph for Arduboy2Data.cpp:

7.9.1 Detailed Description

Constant data definitions for the Arduboy2 and Arduboy2Base classes.

7.10 Sprites.cpp File Reference

A class for drawing animated sprites from image and mask bitmaps.

Generated on Tue Sep 29 2020 14:29:54 for Arduboy2 Library by Doxygen
#include "Sprites.h"

Include dependency graph for Sprites.cpp:

---

7.10.1 Detailed Description

A class for drawing animated sprites from image and mask bitmaps.

---

7.11 Sprites.h File Reference

A class for drawing animated sprites from image and mask bitmaps.
#include "Arduboy2.h"
#include "SpritesCommon.h"

Include dependency graph for Sprites.h:
This graph shows which files directly or indirectly include this file:

```
  Sprites.h
     
    Arduboy2.h  Sprites.cpp
     
    Arduboy2.cpp  SpritesB.h  Arduboy2Audio.cpp  Arduboy2Data.cpp
     
    SpritesB.cpp
```

**Classes**

- class **Sprites**

  A class for drawing animated sprites from image and mask bitmaps.

### 7.11.1 Detailed Description

A class for drawing animated sprites from image and mask bitmaps.

### 7.12 SpritesB.cpp File Reference

A class for drawing animated sprites from image and mask bitmaps. Optimized for small code size.

```cpp
#include "SpritesB.h"
```

Include dependency graph for SpritesB.cpp:

```
  SpritesB.cpp
     
    SpritesB.h
     
    Arduboy2.h
     
    Arduboy2Audio.h
    Arduboy2Core.h
    Arduboy2Beep.h
    Sprites.h
    Print.h
     
    EEPROM.h
    Arduino.h
    avr/power.h
    avr/sleep.h
    SpritesCommon.h
```

### 7.12.1 Detailed Description

A class for drawing animated sprites from image and mask bitmaps. Optimized for small code size.
7.13  
SpritesB.h File Reference

A class for drawing animated sprites from image and mask bitmaps. Optimized for small code size.
#include "Arduboy2.h"
#include "SpritesCommon.h"

Include dependency graph for SpritesB.h:

This graph shows which files directly or indirectly include this file:

Classes

- class SpritesB

  A class for drawing animated sprites from image and mask bitmaps. Optimized for small code size.

7.13.1  Detailed Description

A class for drawing animated sprites from image and mask bitmaps. Optimized for small code size.

7.14  
SpritesCommon.h File Reference

Common header file for sprite functions.
This graph shows which files directly or indirectly include this file:

7.14.1 Detailed Description

Common header file for sprite functions.
## Index

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>A_BUTTON</th>
<th>Arduboy2Core.h, 154</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>allPixelsOn</td>
<td>Arduboy2, 29</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Arduboy2Base, 81</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Arduboy2Core, 119</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>anyPressed</td>
<td>Arduboy2, 30</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Arduboy2Base, 82</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Arduboy2, 23</td>
<td>allPixelsOn, 29</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>anyPressed, 30</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>arduboy_logo</td>
<td>70</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>arduboy_logo_compressed</td>
<td>70</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>arduboy_logo_sprite</td>
<td>71</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>audio</td>
<td>71</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>begin</td>
<td>30</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>beginDoFirst</td>
<td>30</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>blank</td>
<td>31</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>boot</td>
<td>31</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bootLogo</td>
<td>31</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bootLogoCompressed</td>
<td>31</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bootLogoExtra</td>
<td>32</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bootLogoShell</td>
<td>32</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bootLogoSpritesBOverwrite</td>
<td>33</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bootLogoSpritesBSelfMasked</td>
<td>33</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bootLogoSpritesOverwrite</td>
<td>33</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bootLogoSpritesSelfMasked</td>
<td>33</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bootLogoText</td>
<td>33</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>buttonsState</td>
<td>34</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>collide</td>
<td>34, 35</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cpuLoad</td>
<td>35</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>currentButtonState</td>
<td>71</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>delayShort</td>
<td>35</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>digitalWriteRGB</td>
<td>36</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>display</td>
<td>37</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>displayOff</td>
<td>37</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>displayOn</td>
<td>38</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>drawBitmap</td>
<td>38</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>drawChar</td>
<td>39</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>drawCircle</td>
<td>39</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>drawCompressed</td>
<td>40</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>drawFastHLine</td>
<td>40</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>drawFastVLine</td>
<td>41</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>drawLine</td>
<td>41</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>drawPixel</td>
<td>41</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>drawRect</td>
<td>42</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>drawRoundRect</td>
<td>42</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>drawSlowXYBitmap</td>
<td>43</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>drawTriangle</td>
<td>43</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>everyXFrames</td>
<td>44</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>exitToBootloader</td>
<td>44</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fillCircle</td>
<td>45</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fillRect</td>
<td>45</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fillRoundRect</td>
<td>45</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fillScreen</td>
<td>46</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fillTriangle</td>
<td>46</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>flashlight</td>
<td>47</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>flipHorizontal</td>
<td>47</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>flipVertical</td>
<td>47</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>font5x7</td>
<td>72</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>frameCount</td>
<td>72</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>freeRGBled</td>
<td>48</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>generateRandomSeed</td>
<td>48</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>getBuffer</td>
<td>48</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>getCharacterHeight</td>
<td>49</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>getCharacterSpacing</td>
<td>49</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>getCharacterWidth</td>
<td>49</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>getCursorX</td>
<td>50</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>getCursorY</td>
<td>50</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>getLineSpacing</td>
<td>50</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>getPixel</td>
<td>51</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>getTextBackground</td>
<td>51</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>getTextColor</td>
<td>51</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>getTextRawMode</td>
<td>52</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>getTextSize</td>
<td>52</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>getTextWrap</td>
<td>52</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>height</td>
<td>52</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>idle</td>
<td>53</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>initRandomSeed</td>
<td>53</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>invert</td>
<td>53</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>justPressed</td>
<td>53</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>justReleased</td>
<td>54</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LCDCommandMode</td>
<td>54</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LCDDataMode</td>
<td>55</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>nextFrame</td>
<td>55</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>nextFrameDEV</td>
<td>55</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>notPressed</td>
<td>56</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>paint8Pixels</td>
<td>56</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>paintScreen</td>
<td>57</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pollButtons</td>
<td>58</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pressed</td>
<td>58</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>previousButtonState</td>
<td>73</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>readShowBootLogoFlag</td>
<td>59</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>readShowBootLogoLEDsFlag</td>
<td>59</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>readShowUnitNameFlag</td>
<td>59</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>readUnitID</td>
<td>59</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>readUnitName</td>
<td>60</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
safeMode, 60
sBuffer, 73
sendLCDCommand, 61
setCursor, 61
setCursorX, 61
setCursorY, 62
setFrameDuration, 62
setFrameRate, 62
setRGBled, 63
setTextBackground, 64
setTextColor, 64
setTextRawMode, 65
setTextSize, 65
setTextWrap, 65
SPItransfer, 66
SPItransferAndRead, 66
systemButtons, 67
waitNoButtons, 67
width, 67
write, 67
writeShowBootLogoFlag, 68
writeShowBootLogoLEDsFlag, 68
writeShowUnitNameFlag, 69
writeUnitID, 69
writeUnitName, 69
Arduboy2.cpp, 147
Arduboy2.h, 147
ARDUBOY_LIB_VER, 149
ARDUBOY_UNIT_NAME_BUFFER_SIZE, 149
ARDUBOY_UNIT_NAME_LEN, 149
BLACK, 149
CLEAR_BUFFER, 149
EEPROM_STORAGE_SPACE_START, 149
INVERT, 150
WHITE, 150
Arduboy2Audio, 74
begin, 74
enabled, 75
off, 75
on, 75
saveOnOff, 75
toggle, 76
Arduboy2Audio.cpp, 150
Arduboy2Audio.h, 150
Arduboy2Base, 76
allPixelsOn, 81
anyPressed, 82
arduboy_logo, 114
arduboy_logo_compressed, 114
arduboy_logo_sprite, 115
audio, 115
begin, 82
beginDoFirst, 82
blank, 83
boot, 83
bootLogo, 83
bootLogoCompressed, 83
bootLogoShell, 84
bootLogoSpritesBOverwrite, 84
bootLogoSpritesBSelfMasked, 84
bootLogoSpritesOverwrite, 85
bootLogoSpritesSelfMasked, 85
buttonsState, 85
clear, 85
collide, 86
cpuLoad, 86
currentButtonState, 115
delayShort, 87
digitalWriteRGB, 87, 88
display, 88, 89
displayOff, 89
displayOn, 89
drawBitmap, 89
drawCircle, 90
drawCompressed, 91
drawFastHLine, 91
drawFastVLine, 92
drawLine, 92
drawPixel, 92
drawRect, 93
drawRoundRect, 93
drawSlowXYBitmap, 94
drawTriangle, 94
everyXFrames, 95
exitToBootloader, 95
fillCircle, 96
fillRect, 96
fillRoundRect, 96
fillScreen, 97
fillTriangle, 97
flashlight, 98
flipHorizontal, 98
flipVertical, 98
frameCount, 116
freeRGBled, 99
generateRandomSeed, 99
getBuffer, 99
getPixel, 100
height, 100
idle, 100
initRandomSeed, 100
invert, 101
justPressed, 101
justReleased, 101
LCDCommandMode, 102
LCDDataMode, 102
nextFrame, 102
nextFrameDEV, 103
notPressed, 103
paint8Pixels, 104
paintScreen, 104, 105
pollButtons, 105
pressed, 105
previousButtonState, 116
readShowBootLogoFlag, 106
readShowBootLogoLEDsFlag, 106
Arduboy2Base, 83
Arduboy2Core, 119

BLUE_LED
Arduboy2Core.h, 155

boot
Arduboy2, 31
Arduboy2Base, 83
Arduboy2Core, 119

bootLogo
Arduboy2, 31
Arduboy2Base, 83

bootLogoCompressed
Arduboy2, 31
Arduboy2Base, 83

bootLogoExtra
Arduboy2, 32

bootLogoShell
Arduboy2, 32
Arduboy2Base, 84

bootLogoSpritesBOverwrite
Arduboy2, 33
Arduboy2Base, 84

bootLogoSpritesBSelfMasked
Arduboy2, 33
Arduboy2Base, 84

bootLogoSpritesOverwrite
Arduboy2, 33
Arduboy2Base, 85

bootLogoSpritesSelfMasked
Arduboy2, 33
Arduboy2Base, 85

bootLogoText
Arduboy2, 33

drawChar
Arduboy2, 34
Arduboy2Base, 85
Arduboy2Core, 120

drawFastHLine
Arduboy2, 34
Arduboy2Base, 85
Arduboy2Core, 120

drawFastVLine
Arduboy2, 35
Arduboy2Base, 86

drawLine
Arduboy2, 35
Arduboy2Base, 86

drawPlusMask
Arduboy2, 35
Arduboy2Base, 86

drawRect
Arduboy2, 35
Arduboy2Base, 87
Arduboy2Core, 120

drawSelfMasked
Arduboy2, 36
Arduboy2Base, 87, 88
Arduboy2Core, 120, 121

display
Arduboy2, 37
Arduboy2Base, 88, 89
Arduboy2Core, 121

displayOff
Arduboy2, 37
Arduboy2Base, 89
Arduboy2Core, 121

displayOn
Arduboy2, 38
Arduboy2Base, 89
Arduboy2Core, 122

dOWN_BUTTON
Arduboy2Core.h, 155
drawBitmap
Arduboy2, 38
Arduboy2Base, 89
drawExternalMask
Sprites, 140
SpritesB, 144
drawFastHLine
Arduboy2, 40
Arduboy2Base, 91
drawFastVLine
Arduboy2, 41
Arduboy2Base, 92
drawLine
Arduboy2, 41
Arduboy2Base, 92
drawOverwrite
Sprites, 141
SpritesB, 145
drawPixel
Arduboy2, 41
Arduboy2Base, 92
drawPlusMask
Sprites, 142
SpritesB, 145
drawRect
Arduboy2, 42
Arduboy2Base, 93
drawRoundRect
Arduboy2, 42
Arduboy2Base, 93
drawSelfMasked
Sprites, 142
SpritesB, 145
justPressed
  Arduboy2, 53
  Arduboy2Base, 101
justReleased
  Arduboy2, 54
  Arduboy2Base, 101

LCDCommandMode
  Arduboy2, 54
  Arduboy2Base, 102
  Arduboy2Core, 124

LCDDataMode
  Arduboy2, 55
  Arduboy2Base, 102
  Arduboy2Core, 124

LEFT_BUTTON
  Arduboy2Core.h, 156

nextFrame
  Arduboy2, 55
  Arduboy2Base, 102
nextFrameDEV
  Arduboy2, 55
  Arduboy2Base, 103

noTone
  BeepPin1, 131
  BeepPin2, 134

notPressed
  Arduboy2, 56
  Arduboy2Base, 103

off
  Arduboy2Audio, 75

on
  Arduboy2Audio, 75

paint8Pixels
  Arduboy2, 56
  Arduboy2Base, 104
  Arduboy2Core, 125

paintScreen
  Arduboy2, 57
  Arduboy2Base, 104, 105
  Arduboy2Core, 125, 126

PIN_SPEAKER_1
  Arduboy2Core.h, 156

PIN_SPEAKER_2
  Arduboy2Core.h, 156

Point, 135
  Point, 136
  x, 136
  y, 136

pollButtons
  Arduboy2, 58
  Arduboy2Base, 105

pressed
  Arduboy2, 58
  Arduboy2Base, 105

previousButtonState
  Arduboy2, 73
  Arduboy2Base, 116

Print, 136

readShowBootLogoFlag
  Arduboy2, 59
  Arduboy2Base, 106

readShowBootLogoLEDsFlag
  Arduboy2, 59
  Arduboy2Base, 106

readShowUnitNameFlag
  Arduboy2, 59
  Arduboy2Base, 106

readUnitID
  Arduboy2, 59
  Arduboy2Base, 107

readUnitName
  Arduboy2, 60
  Arduboy2Base, 107

Rect, 137
  height, 138
  Rect, 138
  width, 138
  x, 139
  y, 139

RED_LED
  Arduboy2Core.h, 156

RGB_OFF
  Arduboy2Core.h, 156

RGB_ON
  Arduboy2Core.h, 156

RIGHT_BUTTON
  Arduboy2Core.h, 156

safeMode
  Arduboy2, 60
  Arduboy2Base, 108
  Arduboy2Core, 126

saveOnOff
  Arduboy2Audio, 75

sBuffer
  Arduboy2, 73
  Arduboy2Base, 117

sendLCDCommand
  Arduboy2, 61
  Arduboy2Base, 108
  Arduboy2Core, 126

setCursor
  Arduboy2, 61

setCursorX
  Arduboy2, 61

setCursorY
  Arduboy2, 62

setFrameDuration
  Arduboy2, 62
  Arduboy2Base, 109

setFrameRate
  Arduboy2, 62
  Arduboy2Base, 109
setRGBled
Arduboy2, 63
Arduboy2Base, 109, 110
Arduboy2Core, 127

setTextBackground
Arduboy2, 64

setTextColor
Arduboy2, 64

setTextRawMode
Arduboy2, 65

setTextSize
Arduboy2, 65

setTextWrap
Arduboy2, 65

SPItransfer
Arduboy2, 66
Arduboy2Base, 110
Arduboy2Core, 128

SPItransferAndRead
Arduboy2, 66
Arduboy2Base, 111
Arduboy2Core, 128

Sprites, 139
drawErase, 140
drawExternalMask, 140
drawOverwrite, 141
drawPlusMask, 142
drawSelfMasked, 142

Sprites.cpp, 157
Sprites.h, 158

SpritesB, 143
drawErase, 144
drawExternalMask, 144
drawOverwrite, 145
drawPlusMask, 145
drawSelfMasked, 145

SpritesB.cpp, 159
SpritesB.h, 160

SpritesCommon.h, 160

systemButtons
Arduboy2, 67
Arduboy2Base, 111

timer
BeepPin1, 131
BeepPin2, 134
toggle
Arduboy2Audio, 76
tone
BeepPin1, 132
BeepPin2, 134, 135

UP_BUTTON
Arduboy2Core.h, 157

waitNoButtons
Arduboy2, 67
Arduboy2Base, 111

WHITE

WHITE